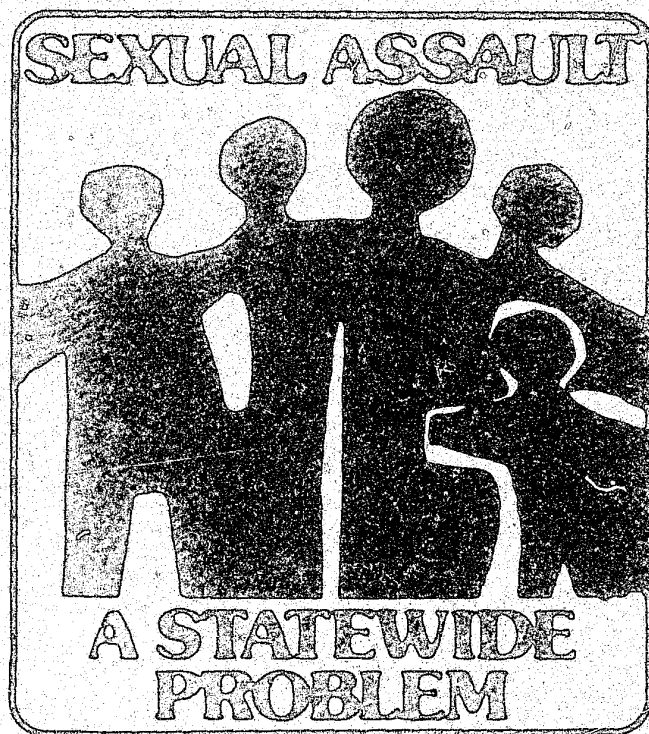


CE Sent
5-24-88



109228

Second Edition

A Procedural Manual for Law Enforcement
Medical, Human Services and Legal Personnel

U.S. Department of Justice
National Institute of Justice

100-28

This document is being reproduced for use by the Federal Bureau of Investigation (FBI) and its component offices. It is not to be distributed outside the FBI. The views expressed herein are those of the author and do not necessarily represent those of the Department of Justice or the Federal Bureau of Investigation.

This document is being reproduced for use by the Federal Bureau of Investigation (FBI) and its component offices. It is not to be distributed outside the FBI.

This document is being reproduced for use by the Federal Bureau of Investigation (FBI) and its component offices. It is not to be distributed outside the FBI.

This document is being reproduced for use by the Federal Bureau of Investigation (FBI) and its component offices. It is not to be distributed outside the FBI.

This document is being reproduced for use by the Federal Bureau of Investigation (FBI) and its component offices. It is not to be distributed outside the FBI.

SEXUAL ASSAULT: A STATEWIDE PROBLEM 1986 EDITION

A Procedural Manual Prepared by and for

- * Law Enforcement Personnel
- * Medical Personnel
- * Social Service Personnel
- * Legal Personnel
- * Concerned Individuals

NCJRS

1986 Edition Compiled and Edited by
Dottie Bellinger

FEB 18 1988

1976 Edition Compiled & Edited by **ACQUISITIONS**
Eileen Keller

Portions of this manual are adaptations from:

Sexual Assault: A Manual for Law Enforcement, Medical, Social Service, Volunteer and Prosecutorial Personnel and Agencies. Sexual Assault Services, Office of the Hennepin County Attorney, 2000 Government Center, Minneapolis, Minnesota.

Focus on Sex Crimes. Polk County Rape/Sexual Assault Care Center, 700 East University, Des Moines, Iowa.

Rape and Its Victims: A Report for Citizens, Health Facilities, and Criminal Justice Agencies. Center for Women Policy Studies, ©1974, and Law Enforcement Assistance Administration, U.S. Dept. of Justice.

Incest: Confronting the Silent Crime. Minnesota Program for Victims of Sexual Assault, Minnesota Department of Corrections, St. Paul.

Materials in this manual may be reproduced with the permission of:

Minnesota Program for Victims of Sexual Assault
300 Bigelow Bldg.
450 North Syndicate St.
St. Paul, Minnesota 55104
(612) 642-0256

ACKNOWLEDGMENTS FOR THE 1986 EDITION

The following individuals provided invaluable assistance in reviewing and updating substantial portions of this manual for the 1986 Edition:

LIEUTENANT CAROLEN BAILEY, St. Paul Police
Department, St. Paul

RAJ DUTT, M.D., F.A.A.P., Emergency
Physician's Professional Association,
Mercy Medical Center, Coon
Rapids

CAPTAIN LEN FOX, Commander, Technical
Services Division, Dakota County
Sheriff's Office, Hastings

CAROLYN LEVITT, M.D., Director of Ambula-
tory Care, Children's Hospital, St.
Paul

PEGGY MILLER, Assistant Program Direc-
tor, Sexual Offense Services of
Ramsey County, St. Paul

MINDY MITNICK, Ph.D., Licensed Psycholo-
gist, Uptown Mental Health
Center, Minneapolis

BECKY MONTGOMERY, Child Sexual Abuse
Specialist, Minnesota Department
of Human Services, St. Paul

JEANNE SCHLEH, Assistant Ramsey County
Attorney, St. Paul

ACKNOWLEDGMENTS FOR THE 1976 EDITION

BOARD OF DIRECTORS MINNESOTA PROGRAM FOR VICTIMS OF SEXUAL ASSAULT

ANN ADAMS, ACSW, Social Worker
ANN ALTON, Attorney
CAROLEN BAILEY, Police Officer
ARLENE BJORKMAN, Social Worker
DORIS CARANICAS, Health Services
Professional
BARBARA CHESTER, Ph.D.,
Psychologist
RAJ DUTT, M.D., F.A.A.P., Physician
FORREST HARRIS, Ph.D., Professor
JUDITH HEALEY, Interested Citizen
PEGGY HENRY, Interested Citizen
LEAH HOROWITZ, Psychologist
ROBERT JOHNSON, Attorney
KAREN KLINEFELTER, MSW, Social
Worker

CANDACE OLSON, Interested Citizen
SUSAN OUSLEY, Interested Citizen
GARRY F. PETERSON, M.D., Physician
WILLIAM QUINN, Police Officer
CATHY REBUFFONI, Public Relations
Professional
SHARON SAYLES, Corrections
Professional
SANDRA SCARR-SALAPATEK, Ph.D.,
Child Development Professional
NORMA THORP, Interested Citizen
MARLENE TRAVIS, Sexual Assault
Services Provider
RAHN WESTBY, Attorney
MARY ZIEGENHAGEN, Interested
Citizen

Ex-Officio Members, Minnesota Program for Victims of Sexual Assault

David Beauchamp, State Legislator
Linda Berglin, State Legislator
Nancy Brataas, State Legislator

Jerry Knickerbocker, State Legislator
David R. Leslie, District Judge

The Board of Directors of the Minnesota Program for Victims of Sexual Assault wishes to acknowledge the contribution of the following individuals who gave invaluable time and assistance in their specific area of expertise.

DEBORAH ANDERSON, Sexual Assault
Services Provider
EDWARD C. ANDERSON, Attorney
STEVE ASKEW, Attorney
JOHN BORG, Attorney
PATRICIA BRAUN, R.N., Nurse
BETTY CAVANAUGH, R.N., Nurse
DALE DOWSON, Police Officer
BARTON EPSTEIN, Crime Laboratory
Specialist
ANN FISHER, Sexual Assault Services
Provider
JUNE FLEESON, Sexual Assault Services
Provider
ROBERT T. FLINT, Ph.D., Psychologist
ANGELA FREICHS, Sexual Assault Services
Provider
NORLA HESSE, R.N., Nurse

WILLIAM H. HOOGESTRAAT, Police Officer
CINDY HUNSTIGER, R.N., Nurse
SUSAN KINSEY, Interested Citizen
LUCILLE KNOLL, R.N., Nurse
TERRY LABER, Crime Laboratory Specialist
MARY MALONEY, ASCW, Sexual Assault
Services Provider
JAN MARTINSON, Sexual Assault Services
Provider
JOAN MCGRATH, Interested Citizen
SUE NELSON, Interested Citizen
CARL PEARSON, Law Enforcement
Professional
STEPHEN RATHKE, Attorney
SUE REMUS, Sexual Assault Services
Provider
MARY SCOTT, Family Planner
MARLYN SWANSON, Public Health Educator

The Board of Directors gives special acknowledgment to the following staff members:

Peggy Specktor
Eileen Keller
Shari Lynn Burt

PREFACE

Sexual assault is a humiliating and often terrifying and brutal crime, an act which violates a person's innermost physical and psychological being. It includes rape, same-sex assault, child sex abuse and incest and any other sexual activity which a person is forced into without his/her consent. Although each victim responds to the sexual assault in a different way, every victim needs strong support from family and friends as well as from medical, legal, law enforcement and social service personnel. It is hoped that with this support each victim may come through the experience a stronger person.

In many communities throughout Minnesota personnel in medical facilities, prosecutors' offices, police departments and social service agencies as well as individuals involved in community action groups are working to improve their agencies' response to sexual assault victims.* This manual is addressed to any of these agencies or communities throughout Minnesota. The recommended procedure should be considered as guidelines to be adapted to each particular community, taking into consideration the needs of that community as well as variations in services available, agency size, etc.

This manual is divided into five chapters: **Law Enforcement Investigation of Sexual Assault Crimes, The Medical Treatment of Sexual Assault Victims, Counseling the Victim of Sexual Assault, The Prosecution of Sexual Assault Crimes, and The Child as Victim.** Because the functions and procedures of law enforcement, medical, social service and prosecutorial personnel are highly interdependent it is recommended that the manual be read in its entirety.

*In many communities the efforts of agencies and community groups to re-examine their procedures have already resulted in innovative changes — both within the agencies and in the community at large. Some communities have organized programs and task forces which coordinate services for sexual assault victims.

TABLE OF CONTENTS

CHAPTER ONE

**LAW ENFORCEMENT INVESTIGATION OF
SEXUAL ASSAULT CRIMES**

I. Introduction	3
II. General Principles	3
A. The Victim	3
B. The Victim's Family	4
C. Sexual Assault Counseling Services	4
D. Corroborating Evidence	4
E. The Victim's Statement as Evidence	5
F. Evidence of the Victim's Prior Sexual Conduct	5
III. Basic Duties and Responsibilities of the Officers Investigating a Sexual Assault Crime	5
A. Dispatcher	5
B. Responding Officers	6
1. Division of Responsibility	6
2. Preliminary Interview of the Victim	7
3. Writing the Report.....	7
4. Witnesses	7
5. Gathering and Preserving the Evidence at the Scene .	8
6. The Medical Examination	8
C. Detective	8
1. Interviewing the Victim	8
a. Setting the Stage for the Interview	8
b. Conducting the Interview	9
2. Follow-Up Investigative Work	9
a. Identification Procedures	9
b. The Modus Operandi File	10

IV. Gathering the Evidence: Checklist in Sexual Assault Cases .	10
A. Obtaining Facts	10
1. Victim	10
2. Offense	10
3. Suspect	10
4. Witnesses	10
B. Physical Evidence from the Scene	11
C. Physical Evidence from the Victim	11
D. Physical Evidence from the Suspect	12
E. Bureau of Criminal Apprehension (BCA) Laboratory Capabilities	12
1. Introduction	12
2. Information Determinable by Blood Tests	12
3. Information Determinable from Other Significant Body Fluids	13
4. Information Determinable from Hairs and Fibers	13
5. Information Concerning Control Samples	14
Appendix	
A. Crisis Intervention and Investigation of Forcible Rape ...	17
B. Interviewing the Rape Victim	23

CHAPTER TWO

**THE MEDICAL TREATMENT
OF SEXUAL ASSAULT VICTIMS**

I. Introduction	29
II. General Principles	29
A. Philosophy	29
B. Privacy	29
C. Patient Priority	29
D. Victim Participation in Decision-Making	30
E. Reporting	30
F. Cost of Treatment	30
III. Pre-examination Considerations	30
A. The Victim	30
1. Meeting the Immediate Needs of the Victim	30
2. Preparing the Victim for Examination	31
B. Consent Forms, Release of Evidence and Confidentiality ..	31
IV. Duties and Responsibilities of Medical Personnel	32
A. The Medical Team	32
1. The Victim Support Person	32
2. The Emergency Room Nurse	33
3. The Physician	33
B. Guide to Medical Testimony in a Criminal Prosecution ..	34
V. Examination and Treatment of the Victim	35
A. Obtaining the History	35
B. The Evidentiary Examination	36
1. The Victim's Clothing	36
2. The Physical Examination	36
a. Assessment of Injuries	36
b. Treatment of Injuries	36
c. Pelvic and Rectal Examination	37

3. Laboratory Tests	37
a. Samples for Laboratory Testing	37
b. Evidence Check-Off List	39
4. Instruments and Equipment	40
5. Protection of Chain of Custody of Evidence	40
6. Completion of Medical Records	41
C. Prevention of Disease	41
1. Informing the Victim	41
2. Follow-up Tests	41
3. Medical Treatment for Venereal Disease	42
D. Pregnancy	42
E. Follow-Up	43
1. Medical Follow-Up	43
2. Counseling Follow-Up	44

Appendix

A. Authorization for Release of Medical Information for Victims of Sexual Assault	47
B. Hennepin County Medical Center Emergency Department Nursing Sexual Assault Report	49
C. Protection of Chain of Custody of Evidence — Sample Form	51
D. Bureau of Criminal Apprehension (BCA) Laboratory Capability	53

CHAPTER THREE

COUNSELING THE VICTIM OF SEXUAL ASSAULT

I. Introduction	57
II. The Crisis of Sexual Assault	57
A. Basic Assumptions	57
B. Implications for Counseling	57
C. Counselor Responsibility	58
III. The Victim	58
A. Patterns of Response to Sexual Assault	58
B. Victims' Feelings	59
C. Needs of the Victim	60
1. Crisis Intervention	61
2. Assistance with Life-Sustaining Needs: Housing, Transportation, Child Care	61
3. Medical Information and Care	61
4. Legal Procedural Information	61
5. Advocacy	61
6. Individual Counseling	62
7. Group Counseling - Support Group	62
8. Family Counseling	62
9. Referral	63
IV. The Counselor/Support Person	63
A. Who Counsels/Provides Support	63
B. Needs of the Counselor/Support Person	63
C. Role of the Counselor/Support Person	64
1. The Counseling/Support Process - Responding to the Emotional Needs of the Victim	64
2. Assisting in Decision-Making	65
3. Institutional Advocate	67

4. Assessing Adjustment and the Need for Referral	68
5. Follow-Up	68
Appendix	
A. Myths & Facts About Sexual Assault	71
B. A Note to Those Closest to Rape Victims: How You Can Help	75

CHAPTER FOUR

**THE PROSECUTION OF
SEXUAL ASSAULT CRIMES**

I. Introduction	79
II. The Minnesota Criminal Sexual Conduct Law	79
A. Introduction	79
B. Definitions	80
C. Degrees of Criminal Sexual Conduct	81
E. Evidence	83
F. Victim Identity in Court Records	84
G. Court Instructions	84
H. Voluntary Relationships	84
I. Cost of Medical Exam	84
J. Age of Consent	84
K. Resulting Death Defined as Murder	84
III. The Court Process	84
A. Filing the Complaint (Charges) Indictment	85
B. Initial Court Appearance (Presentment Hearing)	85
C. Omnibus Hearing	85
D. Arraignment	86
E. Plea Bargaining	86
F. Trial	86
G. Sentencing	87
H. Appeal	87
I. Release	87
IV. Protocol for the Prosecution of Sexual Assault Cases	87
A. General Principles	87
B. Role of the Prosecuting Attorney	88

C. Role of the Victim Support Person	89
D. The Victim's Role in the Prosecution	90
E. Other Considerations in the Prosecution of Sex Crimes	92
1. Pretrial Preparations	92
2. Physical Evidence	93
3. Depositions	94
4. Motions in Limine	94
5. Admissibility of Other Crimes	95
6. The Trial	95
a. Jury Selection	95
b. Opening Statement	95
c. Use of Witnesses in Trial	95
d. Closing Argument	96
7. Jury Instructions	96

Appendix

A. The Minnesota Criminal Sexual Conduct Law (Minnesota Statutes 609.185-609.35)	101
B. The Minnesota Crime Victims Reparations Law (Minnesota Statutes 299B.01-2990.16)	107

CHAPTER FIVE

THE CHILD AS VICTIM

I. Definitions of Child Sexual Abuse	111
II. Incidence	112
III. Common Misconceptions About Child Sexual Abuse	114
IV. Laws Relating to Child Sexual Abuse	116
V. Behavioral Cues for Child Sexual Abuse	116
A. Cues in Younger Children	116
B. Cues in Older Children	116
C. Physical Cues	117
D. Cues in Father — Daughter Incest	117
E. Cues in Brother — Sister Incest	117
VI. Protocols for Assisting Child Victims	117
VII. Police Interview of the Child Sexual Abuse Victim	117
A. Psychological Reactions	118
1. Parents	118
2. Child	119
B. Before the Interview	120
C. The Interview	120
1. Timing	120
2. Setting	120
3. Recording the Interview	121
4. Parents as Observers	121
5. Rapport	121
6. Obtaining the Statement	122
7. Witness Evaluation	122
D. Ending the Interview	123
E. Other Witnesses	123
F. Preparing the Child for Court	124

VIII. Medical Examination of Children Following Sexual Assault .	124
A. General Guidelines	124
B. Objectives of the Medical Evaluation	124
C. Concerns Regarding the Child Victim	125
D. Concerns Regarding the Parents and Extended Family ..	125
E. History	126
F. Physical Examination	127
G. Forensic Laboratory Determinations	128
1. Documentation of Presence of Semen	128
2. Documentation of Sexually Transmitted Diseases	129
3. Pregnancy Concerns & Prophylaxis	130
H. Reporting Requirements	130
IX. Support Counseling for Child Sexual Abuse Victims & their Families	130
X. What to Do If a Child Tells You About Sexual Abuse	132
XI. Reporting Child Sexual Abuse	133
A. General Rules for Reporting Sexual Abuse	133
B. Who Must Report	134
C. What Must be Reported	134
D. When Must the Report Be Made	135
E. Who Should Receive the Report	135
F. How Must the Report Be Made	135
G. How the Law Protects the Reporter	136
H. Consequences for Not Reporting	136
I. Action After the Report is Received	136
Appendix	
Child Abuse Reporting Law	139
(Minnesota Statutes 626.556)	

CHAPTER ONE

LAW ENFORCEMENT INVESTIGATION OF SEXUAL ASSAULT CRIMES

CHAPTER ONE

LAW ENFORCEMENT INVESTIGATION OF SEXUAL ASSAULT CRIMES

I. Introduction	3
II. General Principles	3
A. The Victim	3
B. The Victim's Family	4
C. Sexual Assault Counseling Services	4
D. Corroborating Evidence	4
E. The Victim's Statement as Evidence	5
F. Evidence of the Victim's Prior Sexual Conduct	5
III. Basic Duties and Responsibilities of the Officers Investigating a Sexual Assault Crime	5
A. Dispatcher	5
B. Responding Officers	6
1. Division of Responsibility	6
2. Preliminary Interview of the Victim	7
3. Writing the Report.....	7
4. Witnesses	7
5. Gathering and Preserving the Evidence at the Scene .	8
6. The Medical Examination	8
C. Detective	8
1. Interviewing the Victim	8
a. Setting the Stage for the Interview	8
b. Conducting the Interview	9
2. Follow-Up Investigative Work	9
a. Identification Procedures	9
b. The Modus Operandi File	10

IV. Gathering the Evidence: Checklist in Sexual Assault Cases .	10
A. Obtaining Facts	10
1. Victim	10
2. Offense	10
3. Suspect	10
4. Witnesses	10
B. Physical Evidence from the Scene	11
C. Physical Evidence from the Victim	11
D. Physical Evidence from the Suspect	12
E. Bureau of Criminal Apprehension (BCA) Laboratory Capabilities	12
1. Introduction	12
2. Information Determinable by Blood Tests	12
3. Information Determinable from Other Significant Body Fluids	13
4. Information Determinable from Hairs and Fibers	13
5. Information Concerning Control Samples	14
Appendix	
A. Crisis Intervention and Investigation of Forcible Rape ...	17
B. Interviewing the Rape Victim	23

LAW ENFORCEMENT INVESTIGATION OF SEXUAL ASSAULT CRIMES

I. INTRODUCTION

The following guidelines are intended for use by any law enforcement agency throughout Minnesota, irrespective of the size or make-up of that agency. It is recognized, however, that certain minor adaptations of the guidelines may need to be made to take into consideration variations in the size of the agency, geographical factors, etc.

Because effective criminal sexual assault prosecution relies on the combined efforts of law enforcement, medical, social service and prosecutorial personnel and agencies it is necessary, as a practical matter, to be fully cognizant of the professional responsibilities of one another when dealing with sexual assault victims. Law enforcement personnel are urged to familiarize themselves with the procedures presented in other chapters of this manual.

This Chapter, **Law Enforcement Investigation of Sexual Assault Crimes**, contains basic principles that should govern the investigation of sexual assault crimes. It states what kinds of situations the officers will most likely confront upon investigating a sexual assault case as well as what the officers' goals should be when investigating. The duties and responsibilities of the various officers involved in a sexual assault investigation, namely, the dispatcher, the investigating officers, and the detective, are described. Evidence that is normally required for a sexual assault prosecution and methods used to recognize, obtain, and preserve the evidence while maintaining the chain of custody are explained in detail. Bureau of Criminal Apprehension (BCA) services available for analyzing the evidence are also discussed.

II. GENERAL PRINCIPLES

Since the police/sheriff may be the first contact the victim has after the sexual assault, it is critical that law enforcement personnel be aware of their responsibility in providing for the needs of the victim. This responsibility is two-fold in nature:

- 1) Assisting, protecting and serving the victim in a humane, sensitive way that recognizes the physical and emotional trauma the victim has suffered; and
- 2) properly investigating the case, and gathering and preserving evidence necessary for possible prosecution of the crime.

A fine balance of these two roles is essential. A victim who is treated with kindness, patience and respect and who understands what the officer is doing and why, will be of far more assistance in the investigation and will usually be a better witness for the prosecution. At the same time, a thorough initial investigation will produce a stronger case for trial than a sketchy initial investigation where evidence has disappeared or been destroyed. The following guidelines are intended to assist law enforcement personnel in their attempt to achieve a balance of these two roles.

A. *The Victim*

Sexual assault is a traumatic, life-threatening experience which usually leaves the victim feeling humiliated, degraded, distrustful, afraid and angry. Every victim responds to the experience in a different way. Some victims may appear relatively

calm and respond to questions in a matter-of-fact manner, whereas other victims may be crying hysterically and unable to respond to any questioning. (A more thorough description of the victim's feelings and responses to a sexual assault is presented in Chapter Three, **Counseling the Victim of Sexual Assault.**)

In dealing with the sexual assault victim, it is essential that the officer communicate an understanding of the traumatic experience the victim has just been through. The officer can do this by stating directly, "I know you have just been through a terrifying experience, and if you feel uncomfortable at any time while we are talking, we will take a break until you feel able to talk about it." This gives the victim a feeling of control over the situation.

The officer should also explain what he/she is doing and why, so that the victim understands the need for each step in the investigation process. If the victim understands the reasons for the procedures, such as the need to ask very personal, intimate and detailed questions, he/she will be more willing to offer assistance and cooperation with the investigation.

Additional guidelines for dealing sensitively with the victim are discussed later under Interviewing the Victim.

B. The Victim's Family

The victim's family may also feel victimized by the sexual assault and may need support and calming from the officer. Sometimes parents, loved ones or friends will react with anger because they feel helpless to correct the situation. They may direct that anger towards the victim by blaming him/her for whatever happened or by showing feelings of distrust of the victim. Therefore, in general, the officer should not interview the victim in the presence of family or friends. The victim usually will not be as candid if family or friends are present and may not want them to hear the details at all. The officer should briefly inform the family of what happened and suggest that they not inquire into details unless the victim volunteers them. To do otherwise could lead to confusion and problems with the investigation.

If the victim indicates a desire to have a relative, close friend, or a victim support person present, the officer should contact that person to meet the victim either at the hospital or some other place that is convenient and at a time that will not interfere with the initial investigation. The officer must make sure that someone is present to comfort and be with the victim once the investigation has been completed. However, care must be taken to not let family or friends interfere in any way with the investigation.

C. Sexual Assault Counseling Services

A counselor or victim support person may be important for the victim's emotional adjustment or for family support. Law enforcement agencies should be familiar with the supportive services in the local community in order to inform the victim, and make contact or referral if the victim so chooses. The type, extent and quality of service will vary with the community. Rape crisis centers may be of significant assistance to the police as well when they can work out mutually supportive operations and referral systems.

D. Corroborating Evidence

Ordinarily the only witnesses to a sex crime are the victim and the assailant. Although corroborating evidence, that is, evidence tending to prove the crime ulti-

mately charged, is no longer required by Minnesota law, it can be critical in obtaining a conviction. A jury will rarely convict a defendant unless there is some corroborating evidence in addition to the victim's testimony. The evidence available in a sexual assault case may be simple in nature but of great corroborative value. Corroborative evidence may include the presence of sperm, blood stains, dirty or messy clothing or hair, minor abrasions or scratches, physical evidence to identify the scene, or evidence of a struggle. Even minor details such as the victim's recollection that there was a red light bulb in the ceiling of the room to which the defendant took the victim, if proven, will provide very important corroborating evidence. It is therefore essential that every bit of possible evidence be preserved and gathered immediately.

E. The Victim's Statement As Evidence

In a sex crime, statements made by the victim soon after the crime concerning the identity or description of the assailant or details of the sexual assault are admissible in court to corroborate the victim's testimony. In Minnesota, such statements made by the victim soon after the offense are admissible as evidence of the victim's prompt complaint, which is a specific exception in sexual assault cases to the general exclusionary rule against hearsay evidence. They are admissible under the rule of law that an immediate statement made under the influence of an exciting or traumatic event before the individual has an opportunity to reflect or to fabricate a story is likely to be reliable. This is not meant to imply that delayed reporting is likely to be false. Frequently, the police officer is the first person to whom the victim tells the story in any detail. If the police officer's interview with the victim occurs reasonably soon after the crime or reasonably soon after the victim was able to reach safety, the officer may be able to testify at trial what the victim related. Therefore, it is important for the police officer initially interviewing the victim to make a complete report of the victim's statement. In general, the officer should write the report in his/her own words rather than quoting the victim verbatim. This may avoid embarrassment later if the victim is unable to remember the exact words he/she used originally. In interviewing a child victim, however, the officer may want to quote the child's exact words.

F. Evidence of the Victim's Prior Sexual Conduct

Evidence of the victim's prior sexual conduct is no longer admissible under Minnesota law except in very limited circumstances. The victim's past sexual behavior can no longer be laid bare before the world. Only in rare instances will previous sexual conduct be admitted as evidence in court, such as previous sexual activity with the accused assailant. By sharing this important information with the victim, the officer may allay some of the victim's fears about reporting and/or prosecuting.

III. BASIC DUTIES AND RESPONSIBILITIES OF THE OFFICERS INVESTIGATING A SEXUAL ASSAULT CRIME

A. Dispatcher

Since the police dispatcher may be the first person the victim contacts after the sexual assault, it is crucial that he/she respond to the call in a calm and supportive manner. The first responsibility of the dispatcher is to determine the victim's need for emergency medical care or immediate police protection. The dispatcher should then obtain the victim's name and present location, and dispatch patrol officers and an ambulance, if needed, to that location. If possible, the dispatcher should remain on the line with the victim until the patrol officers arrive, especially if the victim is alone and wants to stay on the line. The dispatcher should advise the victim not to bathe, change clothes, comb hair, touch any articles or furniture the assailant may have touched, or

in any other way destroy possible evidence. If the victim is able to provide additional information in regard to the description of the assailant or a vehicle used, for example, the dispatcher should relay that information immediately.

The dispatcher should notify the hospital that a victim of a sexual assault will be arriving and should contact any person the victim may want present at the hospital, such as a family member, friend, or a victim support person (if that service is available in the community).

As soon as the police squad has arrived and has the situation under control, all other squads should leave the scene immediately to avoid confusion both at the scene and at the trial. The detectives squad or investigating officer and the laboratory personnel (where available) will be called, and should be the only officers present in addition to the initial squad of patrolmen.

B. *Responding Officers*

The officers who initially respond to a sexual assault call usually provide the bulk of the evidence for the prosecution. Therefore, a thorough and accurate initial investigation is essential.

1. *Division of Responsibility.* Whenever possible, two patrol officers should respond to the initial sexual assault call. This allows one officer to undertake the sole responsibility for dealing with and questioning the victim while the other officer is able to assume primary responsibility for preserving the scene, gathering evidence, searching for the suspect, seeking assistance from detectives and the crime laboratory, and notifying the hospital, and any person the victim may want present for support.

The initial responsibility of the first officer is to assess the victim's need for emergency medical care and, if needed, to provide transportation to the hospital or call an ambulance if the dispatcher has not already done so. If the victim does not need emergency medical care the officer should begin a preliminary investigation. In doing so he/she should constantly be aware of the victim's needs while seeking to obtain the necessary facts such as the assailant's identity and/or description, location and time of the assault, etc.

Questions raised by other officers should be directed to the first officer rather than to the victim in order to avoid subjecting the victim to repeated police questioning. This is not intended to inhibit the initial interview but rather recognizes the severe emotional stress the victim may be experiencing as a result of the sexual assault.

The first officer should remain with the victim throughout the investigative procedure explaining to the victim and the family members or friends the police procedure and its rationale, what is being done to apprehend the suspect, and the investigative and medical procedures that will follow. The officer should accompany the victim to the hospital for medical treatment and an evidentiary examination and, if possible, remain with the victim until the proper medical personnel and/or support person is available. Under no circumstances should the officer be present in the examining room during the examination itself.* The officer should then assure the victim that he/she is available if the victim needs him/her. The victim should also be asked where he/she may be contacted by a detective for a detailed interview and a formal statement (if this did not occur on the scene). If a

*Except in the case of obtaining a dying declaration.

suspect is in custody the investigation must be completed within 36 hours and the officer should ask the victim to be available during that time.

Before leaving the hospital the officer should arrange with medical personnel a time for obtaining the evidence collected at the hospital.

2. *Preliminary Interview of the Victim.* The responding officer has a responsibility to interview the victim and write the initial report of the crime. The purpose of this interview should be to briefly obtain information concerning the basic elements of the crime (location and time of the offense, an accurate description and/or identity of the assailant), as well as information needed to determine what evidence might be available. The officer should begin by explaining the investigative process to the victim: what information is needed and why, the kinds of evidence needed, the purpose of the medical examination, both to discover and treat any injuries and to gather evidence for possible prosecution. He/she should also re-emphasize to the victim the importance of *not* bathing, changing clothes, or in any way destroying possible evidence.

In interviewing the victim, the officer should allow the victim to talk freely and spontaneously, but he/she should not question the victim concerning details of the sexual aspects of the crime except as they relate to evidence that must be preserved and to establish what crime was committed. If the officer attempts to question the victim about minute details not volunteered, the victim is likely either to clam up or to tell him a partial story which will later cause problems in any trial. The initial investigating officer, under that stressful situation, will probably not have the time to establish the same kind of rapport with the victim that the investigating detective will later be able to establish, so the inquiry concerning details should be left to the detective and the prosecutor.

Although the initial interview should be as brief as possible, it is crucial that the officer be aware of the principles of interviewing which are discussed in greater detail under Interviewing the Victim, and in Appendix A, "Crisis Intervention and Investigation of Forcible Rape", M. Bard and K. Ellison; and Appendix B, "Interviewing the Rape Victim", International Association of Chiefs of Police. Both articles provide techniques on what it means to treat a sexual assault victim "sensitively".

3. *Writing the Report.* Each officer should write his/her own report of the initial investigation rather than writing a joint report. In writing the report it is important for the officers to avoid the use of ambiguous or qualified language such as "alleged" victim, which may be used by a defense attorney at trial to imply that the officer did not believe the victim's story. The report should be as complete as possible but stated in the officer's own words rather than quoting the victim directly. Paraphrasing the victim's statement in the officer's own words is advised so that the victim will not appear to be lying when he/she cannot recall word for word what the officer was told.
4. *Witnesses.* The officer who is not interviewing the victim should obtain the names, addresses and phone numbers of all witnesses who saw the victim before the incident, who may have seen the victim with the suspect, anyone who may have seen or heard any part of the incident itself, and everyone to whom the victim spoke after the incident and before the patrol officers arrived. Statements from those individuals will be taken later by the detective and may provide corroborating evidence at trial.

5. *Gathering and Preserving the Evidence at the Scene.* If a mobile crime laboratory or the services of the BCA or Sheriff's Office are not available, gathering and preserving the evidence at the crime scene will be the primary responsibility of the patrol officers. A detailed checklist of evidence needed for prosecution is presented later in this chapter. It is critical that the chain of custody of evidence be maintained by all personnel involved in collecting the evidence.
6. *The Medical Examination.* Time is critical in the obtaining of medical evidence from the victim. Sperm and seminal fluid can be recovered from the victim if the examination takes place soon enough. When the officer accompanies the victim to the hospital for a medical examination, he/she should ask the examining physician and any sexual assault counselors who may be present not to question the victim about irrelevant details of what happened. Obviously, the physician must find out all relevant information for the medical examination, but ordinarily does not need to question the victim about the details of the crime itself. The officer should make sure the physician knows what tests are necessary and that the consent for release of medical information form is signed. If there is any bloody clothing or blood stains at the scene, ask the physician to take and preserve a blood test as well. These will be preserved for possible analysis. A more thorough discussion of the medical examination is presented later in this chapter.

C. Detective

One supervisor should act as coordinator to read and assign all sexual assault cases. One detective should then be assigned to be responsible for each sexual assault case from the beginning of the investigation through trial.

In smaller police departments and agencies the functions of the initial patrol officer and the detective may be the combined function of one person. It will be essential for that person to determine the most feasible time for a detailed interview with the victim. If a suspect is in custody, however, the investigation must be completed within 36 hours.

1. *Interviewing the Victim.*

Please read Appendix A, "Crisis Intervention and Investigation of Forcible Rape", M. Bard and K. Ellison; and Appendix B, "Interviewing the Rape Victim", International Association of Chiefs of Police, in conjunction with this section. Both articles provide excellent information on effective and sensitive police interviewing techniques.

The time to establish a supportive, cooperative relationship between the investigator and the victim is as soon after the crime report as possible. However, the detective investigator must be able to recognize those times when the victim's physical or emotional condition makes such an immediate interview unwise or impossible.

- a. *Setting the Stage for the Interview.* The investigator should first look to the victim's safety, comfort, and privacy. If the attack took place at the victim's home, he/she may like to have the interview at a neighbor's home, for example. In any case, the setting should be comfortable and private, with as few interruptions as possible. Since a relative or friend may be with the victim, it is useful to explain to both of them the purpose of the interview and the necessity, for the sake of both the victim and the police, for privacy, but the friend or relative can be asked to remain nearby.

The investigator should be prepared to take as extensive notes as possible, consistent with the need to keep the interview from becoming impersonal. It is preferable, however, for the investigator to start a flow of conversation before taking any notes. This can be facilitated by first focusing on the victim's feelings and needs, proceeding to a discussion of how the victim and investigator can work together, and finally, explaining what information is needed. By this point, it should be easier for the victim to talk in more detail, and the investigator should begin to take notes.

- b. *Conducting the Interview.* The investigator will want to obtain as much information as possible, bearing in mind the importance of balancing the need for facts with the need to alleviate the victim's distress during the interview. Because some of the questions the investigator will have to ask may embarrass the victim, they should be prefaced with an explanation of why the information is needed. If the interview is put in the context that the victim is not to blame and that many other persons have been victimized by rapists, it may be easier for the victim to talk about the attack. Similarly, if the investigator does not make moral judgements about the circumstances of the sexual assault (such as hitchhiking), or show shock or disdain about the nature of the sexual acts that took place, he/she will not stifle the victim's responsiveness. Questions about the assailant's behavior that are open-ended (i.e. questions which require more than a yes or no answer) will enable the victim to speak more freely and not influence his/her account. If the investigator is able to gear his/her terminology to the level at which the victim is most comfortable, it will make the interview less distressing and, therefore, more informative.

Despite such an approach, some victims may naturally be reluctant to discuss the more intimate details of the crime, and if they cannot be encouraged to do so at this time, they should not be coerced into it. The investigator should not use this reluctance as a means of avoiding subjects he/she finds unpleasant. This simply forces the need for a second interview without necessarily sparing the victim's feelings.

From time to time throughout the interview process, the investigator should attempt to see if the victim can recollect identifying characteristics of the assailant — appearance, clothes, unusual features, voice, words used, and so on. If nothing new is triggered by these inquiries, the officer should proceed with other aspects of the interview rather than probing.

2. *Follow-Up Investigative Work.* The standard law enforcement procedures for locating or apprehending a suspect should be followed in sexual assault cases. If at all possible the same detective who conducted the earlier interview with the victim should also conduct the follow-up investigation. Sensitive treatment of the victim is important both as a matter of human concern and as an essential factor in eliciting the most accurate information from the victim.

- a. *Identification Procedures.* If the police have a suspect in custody who is not known to the victim, a line-up is often preferable to photograph identification. If there appears to be a prime suspect who is not in custody, a photo line-up should be utilized. At least eight to twelve photographs of similarly appearing persons should be shown. The photo line-up procedure should be handled very carefully since the victim may well point out one or more pictures looking like the assailant, which would then make any subsequent identification by the victim worthless in court and probably prevent prosecution of the suspect. It is recom-

mended that a joint police-county attorney policy be established on this procedure to avoid evidentiary problems at trial.

- b. *The Modus Operandi File.* Every department, whether or not it has a specialized sexual assault investigation unit, should develop, update, and improve an MO file for sex offenders. The raw material for this file is made up of the persons in the area who have been convicted of such offenses, those who have been arrested on such charges, and others whose identity may be unknown but who have been reported and described by sexual assault victims — plus all the physical, behavioral, and other identifying characteristics associated with each such person. The investigator should research the MO file to match all possible suspects against the victim's testimony in the interview.

In larger metropolitan or multi-jurisdictional agencies, computerizing the MO files may facilitate the storage, retrieval, and analysis of the information. In smaller jurisdictions or rural areas, law enforcement agencies may well benefit from establishing region-type MO files within the area.

IV. GATHERING THE EVIDENCE: CHECKLIST IN SEXUAL ASSAULT CASES

Most of the evidence will be preserved and gathered by the initial officers, with the exception of intimate details to be learned from the victim by the detective assigned to the case. Both the initial investigating officer and the detective should *explain* to the victim why the following information and evidence is needed.

A. *Obtaining Facts*

Law enforcement and the county attorney in each jurisdiction should cooperatively develop procedures to determine which of the following facts will be obtained by law enforcement personnel and which by the prosecuting attorney.

1. *Victim.* Name, age, home and work addresses and phone numbers, marital status, number of children, time of last intercourse if within the 24-36 hour period prior to the sexual assault.
2. *Offense.* Location, exact time, details of how the sexual assault occurred, what happened prior to the assault and after it occurred, use of weapons or force.
3. *Suspect.* Name and address, if known, or complete description of suspect, car, license plate, etc. Nature of any contact with the suspect prior to the date in question — when, where, for how long, type of contact.
4. *Witnesses.* Obtain names, addresses and phone numbers of all parties who saw the victim before the incident, who saw or heard any part of the incident, who saw the victim with the suspect, or who talked with the victim after the incident and before the police arrived. Each of these individuals should be interviewed by the detective and statements taken from anyone with relevant information or to whom the victim stated what happened before the police arrived. This should be done in order to preserve the victim's statements of prompt complaint and for such individuals to report in testimony at trial.

B. *Physical Evidence From the Scene*

It is the responsibility of the initially responding officers to make sure the scene is preserved until the mobile crime laboratory is available. If no mobile crime laboratory is available the responding officers should see to it that fingerprint processing is completed, detailed photographs of the scene are taken and a diagram of the scene is made prior to disturbing the scene. They must also see that relevant articles are seized, properly marked and inventoried. *Paper* bags, not plastic, should be used to hold any evidence with human secretion (blood, semen, etc.) to prevent deterioration.

If the scene is not available, but can be ascertained, the detective should obtain a search warrant, where indicated, to investigate the scene and to photograph and make a diagram of it, as well as to seize any relevant articles including any items identifying the room or area that the victim recalls and can describe.

C. *Physical Evidence From the Victim*

1. Any evidence-bearing or damaged clothing worn by the victim should be obtained at the hospital, after the victim is provided with a change of clothes.
2. A written description of evidence of a struggle, such as damaged or messing of clothing or hair, or any signs of physical trauma in the victim should be made in the report.
3. Close-up photographs should be taken of any injuries to the victim no matter how minor. Hospital personnel should photograph any injuries of the victim's genitalia during the medical examination. Police personnel should also take photographs of bruises and injuries, especially if the particular police station is equipped with controlled lighting conditions, but should not re-photograph injuries of the victim's genitalia specifically.
4. Medical examination of the victim.
 - a. The hospital should be notified prior to arrival so that personnel and an examining room can be prepared.
 - b. The officer(s) should not be present in the examining room during the physical examination of the victim.*
 - c. The victim should be encouraged to sign a medical waiver, authorizing the release of the medical reports to the appropriate police and prosecuting agencies. The victim should be informed that there is no obligation to prosecute by reporting the crime or by signing the medical waiver.
 - d. The medical protocol section of this manual contains a suggested procedure for the medical examination of sexual assault victims. In general, the medical examination should include a pelvic examination, blood and urine samples for VD and pregnancy tests, blood pressure, pulse, temperature, etc.

Any evidence of abrasion, bruises, scratches, or other injuries should be described on anatomical drawings or photographed (by the doctor or by a nurse if they are located in private areas) and reported by the doctor in detail. If anal or oral intercourse occurred, the doctor should make the appropriate examinations for the presence of seminal fluid.

*Except in the case of obtaining a dying declaration.

e. The officer should receive the following evidence from the doctor or nurse:

- 1) *Victim's clothing (everything relevant)* unless the victim must be taken home to get other clothing first.
- 2) *Photographs taken by the hospital:* The officer should note in his/her report whether or not photographs were taken by hospital personnel and, if so, by whom. The film itself, however, should be kept and developed by hospital personnel.
- 3) *Fingernail scrapings* in sealed containers, if relevant.
- 4) *Pubic hair combings* together with the comb used, in a sealed envelope and plucked hairs from the victim, in a separate sealed labeled envelope.
- 5) *Blood samples*, with a preservative.
- 6) *Swabs/Smears* — vaginal, anal, etc.
- 7) *Saliva samples*, collected and air-dried on a piece of cloth or gauze.

f. All evidence received must be marked with the victim's name, date, hospital number, name of person taking evidence, name of any other person in the chain of evidence, and the name of the officer receiving it. It is helpful to mark items in the same locations to facilitate court identification. All items needing refrigeration should be properly preserved.

D. *Physical Evidence From the Suspect*

In addition to photographs of the suspect's person, clothing and any injuries, and the taking of the suspect's clothing, a search warrant or court should be obtained for obtaining a blood sample and samples of head, chest, or pubic hair if relevant to evidence found on the victim or at the scene of the crime, to be analyzed at the BCA for further identification of the suspect. If the suspect is arrested shortly after the crime, and appears to be intoxicated, an immediate blood test should be done to determine the alcohol or drug level, and a detective should consider making a video tape of his/her interview with the suspect to show that the suspect understands what is going on and is capable of making decisions.

E. *BCA Laboratory Capabilities*

1. *Introduction.* The major types of evidence found in crimes of sexual assault are blood, semen, hairs and fibers. The following discussion will explain the necessity of control samples and what results can reasonably be expected from the various evidence types.
2. *Information Determinable by Blood Tests:*
 - a. Determine whether blood is human or animal origin.
 - b. Classification of dried blood stains into one of four major groups of "O", "A", "B", and "AB". Additionally, blood may be subgrouped in several other factors such as Rh, PGM, EAP, and other blood group systems, depending on size and sample condition.
 - c. Classification of blood from each person involved to determine the possible source of the dried stains. NOTE: It is of little value to show that blood on a

suspect could have come from the victim without also showing that this blood *could not have come* from the suspect himself/herself or one of his/her associates.

- d. Identification of human blood as coming from a particular person is *not* possible. Also the age of a dried stain is not possible to determine.

3. *Information Determinable From Other Significant Body Fluids.*

a. *Seminal stains —*

- 1) Their identification on the victim's clothing, in vaginal swabs, or at the scene can be of value in corroborating claims of a victim.
- 2) If the suspect is a *secretor* the blood group can be determined from the seminal fluid. Additionally the PGM enzyme is present in seminal fluid which can also be determined and compared to that of a suspect.
- 3) Blood controls are necessary to determine the PGM enzyme present in the suspect and victim. Saliva controls are necessary to determine each involved person's secretor status.

b. *Differentiation of secretors and nonsecretors —*

- 1) Accomplished by using saliva controls from all involved persons.
- 2) Secretor — One of about 80% of the population who has in his/her other body fluids (saliva, semen, perspiration, etc.) the same ABO blood group factors which are present in his/her blood.
- 3) Nonsecretor — One of about 20% of the population who does not have ABO blood group factors in his/her other body fluids.

c. *Saliva stains —*

If present on cigarette butts or clothing it may be of value for determining the blood group of the person who deposited it if this person was a secretor.

d. *Limitations on seminal and saliva stain grouping —*

- 1) Semen is often mixed with urine or vaginal secretions of the victim making grouping tests inconclusive.
- 2) The amount of blood group factor present on a cigarette butt or in a seminal stain may be insufficient to give conclusive grouping tests.

4. *Information Determinable From Hairs and Fibers.*

- a. While hair and fiber examinations are circumstantial from an evidentiary standpoint, they can corroborate other evidence or testimony.

b. *Hairs —*

- 1) Hairs can be identified as animal or human in origin.
- 2) If human it can be sometimes determined if the hair was damaged, if the hair was torn in its removal, and the possible area of the body which the hair

originated, such as head vs. pubic. Age and sex cannot, generally, be determined from a hair.

c. *Results of hair comparisons* —

- 1) Hairs match in microscopic characteristics and could have originated either from the same individual or from another individual whose hair exhibits the same microscopic characteristics.
- 2) Hairs are dissimilar and did not originate from the same individual.
- 3) No conclusion could be reached.

d. Control hair samples should consist of at least 12 full length hairs *pulled* from different locations on the head or pubic area.

e. *Fiber examinations* —

- 1) Identification as to type of fiber such as animal, vegetable, synthetic, or mineral.
- 2) Determinations as to type, color, size, weave, and overall microscopic appearance are made between questioned fibers and knowns. A positive match indicates a possible common origin.
- 3) Submit entire garment for control samples.

5. *Information Concerning Control Samples.* Most laboratory examinations are comparative in nature and a meaningful interpretation of results is often not possible without control samples. Consequently, as a general laboratory policy, blood grouping, secretor grouping, and other comparative examinations will be performed only after the appropriate controls from all persons involved have been received.

APPENDIX

CHAPTER ONE

APPENDIX ONE-A

Crisis Intervention And Investigation Of Forcible Rape*

By

Morton Bard and Katherine Ellison

MORTON BARD is a professor of social psychology at the Graduate School and University Center of the City University of New York. His interest in human crisis began with extensive research on the psychological impact of cancer and radical surgery. Dr. Bard has directed a number of innovative community-oriented projects and organized the first Family Crisis Intervention Program within the New York City Police Department. His current focus is on crisis intervention and interpersonal conflict management in the police function.

KATHERINE ELLISON is a doctoral student in social-personality psychology at the Graduate Center of the City University of New York. For the past year, she has served as consultant to the Sex Crimes Analysis Unit of the New York City Police Department as a trainee in urban psychology under an NIMH training grant.

THE TRADITIONAL FOCUS of the police has been on law enforcement: the solution of crime and the apprehension of offenders. However, it has become almost a cliché to point out that analyses of the police function reveal that they have increasingly fallen heir (estimated to occupy between 80 and 90 percent of their time) to an increasing array of important human service functions. Traditional training gives them few tools to aid them in performing these functions. If the police are to provide these human services in the manner most satisfactory both to the public and to the officer, it is essential to draw upon the knowledge in other fields related to human behavior. This does not mean that police officers should be made over into psychologists or social workers, rather it means that they should combine knowledge from these fields with their own unique experiences and expertise to perform all aspects of their job with maximum effectiveness, safety, and satisfaction.

Both law enforcement and human service functions are combined in an officer's dealings with a victim of forcible rape. This paper will deal with ways in which the police can use psychological knowledge both to benefit rape victims and at the same time to enhance their ability to apprehend offenders and close their cases satisfactorily.

The handling of rape investigations with psychological insight not only benefits the victim in terms of future psychological functioning, but also results in greater job satisfaction for the officer. In addition, it has ramifications in a larger sphere: "the word gets around," and an image is projected to the public of an authority with psychological and technical competence. This must lead not only to greater public cooperation but also to a greater sense of security for the public at large.

CRISIS THEORY: THE BACKGROUND

The body of psychological knowledge known as crisis theory is particularly useful in enlarging an officer's understanding of the victim's psychological state and reactions, of the way the victim views the situation, and of the officer's role in relation to that event.

Modern crisis theory had its origins in 1942 when a Boston psychiatrist, Erich Lindemann, and his colleagues from the Harvard Medical School, became involved with the victims and the families of victims of the Cocoanut Grove fire.¹ This terrible nightclub conflagration, in which almost 500 lives were lost and many more people were badly hurt, had a major impact on the city of Boston.

Lindemann's work with survivors, their relatives, and friends, produced many ideas about how to deal with victims in crisis. This work has been enlarged and elaborated on by other researchers in the field. Much of the work that has been done has dealt with people in psychiatric crises, while practical applications in other areas have been slower to develop. This paper will suggest that crisis intervention theory has particular relevance to the police especially in their interactions with the victims of crimes against the person, particularly the crime of forcible rape.

CRISIS AND ITS ASPECTS

Crisis may be interpreted in a wide variety of ways, but common to most definitions is the idea that it is a turning point in a person's life. *It is a subjective reaction to a stressful life experience, one so affecting the stability of the individual that the ability to cope or function may be seriously compromised.* Crisis comes in many kinds and degrees. An event that may be of crisis proportions for one person may have less effect on another, but there are some situations that may be considered crisis inducing for any individuals who experience them.

Crime victimization is one of the most stressful events in life. While it is not usually seen in crisis terms, it has all of the qualities that make for crisis. People tend to react to crime with the behavior that one sees in other, more obvious, crisis-inducing situations.

As every officer realizes, people respond differently to having been victims of crime. While highly personal reactions to stress make it difficult to suggest a formula approach to people in crisis, it is possible to define some aspects of a situation that will typically be perceived and reacted to as a crisis. It may be useful

*Reprinted from *The Police Chief* magazine (May 1974): 165-171, with the permission of the International Association of Chiefs of Police.

¹Lindemann, E. Symptomatology and Management of Acute Grief. *American Journal of Psychiatry*, 101, 1944.

to discuss important characteristics of stressful situations that result in a crisis reaction.

A. Stress

1. *Suddenness.* Stressful life events that are sudden tend to have a crisis impact. When a situation comes on slowly, people are able to readjust their psychological defenses slowly to cope with it. The death of a loved one who has been dying slowly over months or years usually has less crisis impact than a sudden, unexpected death.

2. *Arbitrariness.* A situation that is arbitrary usually is experienced as a crisis. That is the sort of situation that seems unfair, capricious, and highly selective; it seems to happen in a no-fault, "out of the blue" way, resulting in the "why me?" phenomenon. An out-of-control auto selectively hitting one pedestrian in a crowd is an example of arbitrariness.

3. *Unpredictability.* Closely tied to arbitrariness and suddenness is unpredictability. In everyone's life there are normal and predictable developmental crises for which one can plan: marriage, a new job, a school examination, elective surgery, or any number of other events that are stressful but that can be predicted as being such with greater or less accuracy. Crises that can be anticipated lend themselves to planning so that some of the severity of the impact may be reduced. On the other hand, there are those crises which cannot be predicted. They are precipitated by wholly unforeseen events such as natural disasters, serious accidents, or crimes. It is the unpredictable that further confounds and complicates the stressful event leading to a crisis reaction.

B. Reactions to Stress

1. *Disruptiveness.* A crisis reaction has the characteristic of disrupting normal patterns of adaptation. Normally all of us have defenses which operate all the time to preserve the sense of "self," that is, to protect the self against the normal ebb and flow of life's events. We stay on a pretty constant course that way. But under the impact of a crisis-inducing situation, those defenses are disrupted and functioning suffers. Sleeping and eating patterns may become disturbed, work inhibitions may develop, attention and concentration become difficult.

2. *Regression.* Often individuals regress, that is, emotionally they revert to a state of helplessness and dependence that characterizes an earlier stage of development. When in a crisis, an otherwise mature and effective person behaves almost like a child in seeking support and nurturance, guidance, and direction from those regarded as strong and dependable.

3. *Accessibility.* With characteristic defenses disrupted in a state of helpless dependency, individuals in crisis are extraordinarily open and suggestible. This provides a unique opportunity to affect long-term outcomes.

One of an individual's most basic needs at this time is to ventilate feelings—to be able to talk about what has happened, to "get it out of your system." At this point sensitive intervention can help the person work through turbulent feelings about the experience and can minimize the long-term damage to psychological functioning.

If there is insensitive intervention that discourages ventilation, the individual quickly regroupes his defense mechanisms and attempts to use them, often in extreme forms, to deal with the crisis. The defenses, instead of being appropriate reactions to a crisis situation, might harden into inappropriate habit patterns. For example, a common defense mechanism found in victims of crime is repression; they "forget" what has happened to them and can give only the barest, most confused details to the investigating officer. (One psychological theory tells us that this forgetting is only apparent and that the events continue to influence behavior.) Victims may tend to become paranoid and to feel someone is following them, or that the environment is dangerous, or that the offender is lurking nearby, even when this is not possible. They may develop nightmares, compulsions, or excessive, unreasonable phobias. Such defensive reactions often hinder not only the initial investigation, but also the successful legal pursuit of the case when the offender is apprehended and the case comes to trial. The person who "can't remember," who refuses to leave his or her room, and who fears all strangers can hardly be an ideal witness.

The disruption that occurs with crisis may become apparent immediately or there may be a delayed reaction. A police officer often will see a victim of serious crime, such as rape, who seemed calm and unconcerned at the time, but who, three or four weeks later, will need psychiatric treatment or be hospitalized. She may even call the officer who investigated the case and complain of acute or chronic insomnia, or phobias, or that she is depressed and cannot stop crying, and the like. Because crisis-symptoms might not be evident immediately but may show up after some period of time, the officer must act as though the situation is of crisis-proportions.

CHARACTERISTICS OF SUCCESSFUL INTERVENTION

Given the elements that make for crisis, the question then becomes, what are the basic elements that contribute to dealing successfully with a person in crisis? Specifically, what should a police officer do to help the person in crisis regain equilibrium while, at the same time, furthering his own work?

Police have several advantages as crisis intervention agents. Those who have worked with the crisis concept have emphasized the importance of earliness of the intervention. Being on the scene early allows one to take advantage of the period when the victim's defenses are down, when he/she is open and accessible to authoritative and knowledgeable intervention. The police officer is there early simply because people in crisis turn first to the police, especially when the crisis is precipitated by crime. Because the officer is on the scene first, actions taken can critically affect, either positively or negatively, the victim's subsequent behavior.

Almost as important as the immediacy is the question of authority. Most professionals in our society are seen as authority figures and their ability to perform their duties is enhanced by this aura of authority. Professional people are expected to be competent, to be able to do their jobs well. Because professionals are expected to be competent, those seeking their services act in ways that will facilitate this competency; for example, people listen and follow directions.

Some professionals have learned to take advantage of the public confidence that comes with authority. In the field of medicine, it is common knowledge that most of what a doctor cures has nothing to do with anything that is specifically wrong with people. At least 70 percent of the time of a general practitioner is devoted to functional disorders, i.e., with ailments that are basically psychological in origin. (Not unlike the 80 percent of police time being concerned with non-crime functions.) What people are cured by is a kind of laying on of hands. The doctor has come to have enormous authority in the eyes of people and they turn to him for the satisfaction of psychological as well as physical needs. In the course of his training he learns how to use this authority in helping patients feel better.

Similarly, a police officer has considerable authority, both real and symbolic. The officer is the symbolic representation of everything from parent to the state. This is especially so when people are in trouble; people turn to the police to help in all sorts of difficulty, from a cat on the roof, to disputes with landlord or spouse, to emergency illness, to rape and robbery. Trouble is the business of the police, and society grants them much authority to help them deal with it. They must learn to use this authority. Because the police, by the nature of their job, have immediacy and authority, their behavior toward the individual in crisis must have impact upon both short and long-term adaptations of such people.

IS RAPE A SEX CRIME?

It is common to regard rape as sex crime. However, there is reason to question this view. Indeed, looking at it in the traditional way may well create a set in the police investigator's thinking that is dysfunctional. That is, to regard the act primarily as sexual in nature may distort the view of investigating officers, giving them a sense that they are dealing with something that really belongs in the area of morality. If one looks upon rape as a crime against the person, one may be more disposed to see it as one would view other aggressive crimes, such as robbery, assault, etc.

The difference in point of view may have significant effect on the investigator's handling of the case. Despite the new morality, in our society sex is still a subject that is highly charged emo-

tionally, and is difficult to deal with coolly and objectively. Even the most hardened officer, for example, often reports difficulty in dealing with the case of a child who has been sexually molested. The special feelings in our culture about sex are revealed by the fact that, in many states, laws dealing with sex crimes differ significantly from laws dealing with other crimes against the person. For example, a woman carrying a purse is ordinarily not considered to be "asking for" a mugging, but a woman in a short dress is often accused of "asking" to be raped. No other crime has such stringent corroboration rules or requires such blameless character and conduct on the part of the victim.

Recent research on rape² suggests that the intent of the offender is more often aggressive than sexual to prove his own masculinity and invulnerability by scape-goating and degrading the victim. Contrary to popular belief, the average rapist probably is not someone for whom normal sexual outlets are unavailable. Often too, the crime may follow a fight with a mother, a girlfriend or wife, and be a displacement of hostility against that woman.

RAPE IN THE CONTEXT OF CRIMES AGAINST THE PERSON

To understand the impact of rape, it would seem appropriate to examine it in the context of other crimes against the person as they are experienced by the victim. All crimes against the person can be said to be violations of the self³ and, as such, precipitate crisis reactions.

A burglary is such a crisis-inducing violation of the self. People usually regard their homes or apartments as representative of themselves. In an important symbolic sense, their homes are extensions of themselves. It is, in the most primitive sense, both nest and castle. Particularly in a densely populated, highly complex environment it is the place that offers surcease and security. Each nest is constructed uniquely; each is different, just as individuals are different. When that nest is befouled by a burglary, it is not so much the fact that money or possessions have been taken, but more that a part of the self has been intruded upon or violated.⁴

In armed robbery, a somewhat more complex violation of self takes place. While in burglary, the victim is not directly involved, here the violation of self occurs in a somewhat intimate encounter between the victim and the criminal. In this crime, not only is an extension of the self (property, money, etc.) taken from the victim, but he or she is also coercively deprived of independence and autonomy, the ability to determine one's own fate. That is, under threat of violence, the victim surrenders autonomy and control, and his or her fate rests unpredictably in the hands of a threatening "other." This kind of situation must have a profound ego impact.

Now let us go a step further on the scale of violation of self to assault and robbery. Here there is a double threat: the loss of control, the loss of independence, the removal of something one sees symbolically as part of his "self," but now with a new ingredient. An injury is inflicted on the body, which can be regarded as the envelope of the self. The external part of the self is injured, and it is painful, not only physically, but internally in ego terms as well. Victims are left with the physical evidence reminding them that they were forced to surrender their autonomy and also of the fact that they have been made to feel like less than adequate people . . . a visible reminder of their helplessness to protect or defend themselves.

In this discussion we have moved from considering the implications of the violation of self as it relates to the extension of a person (burglary), to the loss of control and autonomy as well as part of the self (armed robbery), then to considering the insult to the envelope of the self as well as the loss of autonomy (assault

and robbery). Now to the ultimate violation of self (short of homicide⁵), forcible rape. In the crime of rape, the victim is not only deprived of autonomy and control, experiencing manipulation and often injury to the envelope of the self, but also intrusion of inner space, the most sacred and most private repository of the self. It does not matter which bodily orifice is breached. Symbolically they are much the same and have, so far as the victim is concerned, the asexual significance that forceful access has been provided into the innermost source of ego.

From an ego-psychological point of view, this kind of forceful intrusion into interior space would have to be one of the most telling crises that can be sustained, particularly since it occurs in the context of the moral taboos which traditionally have surrounded the sex function. Indeed, to view rape as purely a sex crime encourages the search for possible sources of satisfaction in the experience for the victim. Actually, there is little opportunity for gratification in the context. For example, if one focuses only on the sexual, one would be tempted to minimize the effects of rape on women with considerable sexual experience. This is not the case. That is why promiscuous women or prostitutes, for whom sexual activity is certainly part of their normal adaptive pattern, will experience rape as a crisis. For all women the focus is upon the intrusion and the violation of self; even prostitutes, for whom sex is a commodity, there is a need to have a sense of control, a sense of autonomy. When this is taken from any woman, her defenses will be incapable of protecting her ego.

Adding to the victim's distress over violation is her awareness of cultural myths about rape, leading to fears of how friends and relatives will react toward her, and perhaps guilt feelings that she surrendered under duress, to a "fate worse than death." In this fearful, disrupted state, she sometimes comes to the police.

IMPLICATIONS FOR THE INVESTIGATOR

The implications of all this for police investigators are truly profound. If officers realize the crisis significance of rape and have an understanding of their role, particularly in terms of its immediacy and authority, they can be considerably aided in achieving a successful outcome of the investigation. Remember that an individual in crisis may be in a state of regression, and it is natural in such a state to try to defend the self by repressing the noxious experience. While regression provides an opportunity for fostering a relationship with the victim, repression may inhibit the communication of significant information.

A CASE HISTORY OF A RAPE SITUATION

Let us examine an example of a more-or-less typical rape case⁶ and the way it was handled. Of particular interest are some of the crucial situations, how the police in this case handled them, what they did consistent with our understanding of crisis theory, and how they might have responded differently.

One Saturday afternoon an eleven-year-old girl, living in a large apartment complex in New York City, was accosted by a sixteen-year-old boy as she went into an elevator, was forced at knife point to the top of the building, and raped in the stairwell for half an hour. She was injured rather badly. When he left, she went down to the playground where she had been playing table tennis, picked up her racket, in a stunned manner, commented on the experience to two of her little girl friends, then went to her own building, took the elevator to her family's apartment, and told her mother about it. Her mother called the police. The police arrived quickly, questioned the family and the child with official demeanor, took the facts, and advised the family that detectives would be there shortly to conduct an investigation. They then advised a hospital examination and, indeed, took the child and her mother to the hospital which was not far away.

About two hours later, two detectives arrived, asked essentially the same questions that the original officers had asked, told the parents they would be in touch again, and left.

²Amir, Menachim. *Patterns in Forcible Rape*. University of Chicago. Chicago, 1971.

³The self is an abstract concept; sometimes called ego. It is the sum of what and who a person feels he is. A large part of the concept of self involves the body and the way one feels about the body, but it also includes such extensions of the self as clothing, automobile, and home. For example, this may be expressed in such ways as: "That's just the sort of house I'd expect him to have."

⁴This explains the sense of feeling "dirtied" often expressed by burglary victims. The intent to degrade is borne out by the fact that many burglars leave behind wanton destruction, and even, sometimes, deposits of feces.

⁵Homicide, of course, is the ultimate violation of self. However, witnesses of the homicide or relatives of the victim are usually in a crisis state. The intervention techniques useful with the victims of crimes against the person are appropriate for use with these individuals.

⁶Contrary to public expectations, the majority of victims of rape are in their teens, and younger victims are common. Parenthetically, young male victims of sodomy are not uncommon either.

The problems began. The child tried to talk about the event as the evening went on and both mother and father conspired to keep her from talking about it. The mother's guilt was operating; she experienced the event as having somehow been her fault. She had not protected her child, did not go down to the playground with her, did not keep an eye on her, etc. The father was enraged and guilty because he too had somehow failed to protect the child. There was a fifteen-year-old brother in that family who was also thrust into a state of crisis, and was being ignored. Why was he in a state of crisis? It was an event that had involved sex, an issue about which adolescents are particularly concerned. There was not much age difference between the two children: they were of different sexes, and there must have been some feelings. After all, incest taboos operate strongly in all families. And, additionally, the victim had reported that the rapist was about the same age as her brother. Thus the situation must have had serious implications for him.

What we see here is an incident in which the crime of rape has produced a crisis not only for the victim but for the entire family as well.⁷ The impact of the crisis, its shattering effects, the regressive tendency of all members of this family cry out for a firm, gentle but knowledgeable authority who, by his actions, can satisfy the need for support and strength. And if this authority is a police officer, he can at this time set the basis for furthering his investigation.

For example, the parents might be approached in the following way: "Look, we're police officers; we've had experience with this sort of thing, and we understand. So let's talk about what our experience tells us is going to happen as a result of what's gone on here. You're going to feel more guilt than you may realize about what's happened to your little girl. You're going to ask yourselves, 'What could I have done to prevent this?' Well, in reality, you didn't do anything wrong, and neither did she, and there probably was nothing you could have done to prevent it. But we realize that knowing this is so doesn't keep you from feeling guilty all the same, and we understand that."

Just such a simple statement gives the message that this person with authority is knowledgeable and understanding and can actually predict and give voice to the gnawing internal experiences of these parents. Somehow this process is not only reassuring but encourages trust and an openness with the officer.

From there the investigators might go on to anticipate their future reactions so that the family and/or victim can recognize them and deal with them as they occur. As the same time, they may set the basis for furthering the investigation. They might say something like, "We know that this is painful for the family, too. You're probably going to have a tendency not to want to hear about it, to feel that it would be best for everybody if your child didn't talk about it. But our knowledge in these situations tells us that people have a compulsive need to talk about what has happened to them, to 'get it out of their system,' to share it with someone who understands and who won't judge her or be harsh with her or blame her and says in effect, 'We still love you.'"

"Now, I want you to do a job for us. I would like you to listen to what she has to say, and if at any time in the retelling of the story there is a new piece of information you didn't hear before, write it down, and call us immediately."

In other words, these officers would not only be demonstrating to the family that they know what they are doing, but they have also given them a job to do in relation to the event. They have made them partners in apprehending the offender. The family members can feel that they can do some good in the apprehension, and at the same time they are doing the most helpful thing they can for the victim.

From the viewpoint of the investigating officers, this may seem the long way around. It implies that they should not try to get more than the barest facts at first, that the original report by the patrolman first on the scene probably is enough to begin with, and that probing at this point, especially aggressive probing, is more likely to be harmful and impede the flow of information than to be helpful.

So we would suggest that the first interrogation or interview be a very general one, a helpful one, one that demonstrates to the

victim and her family that the officer is concerned about them. The emphasis is on the victim and on her family, not on the offender . . . not yet. First the victim must be allowed to "pull herself together," then she will be willing and able to deal with cooperating in the process of apprehending the offender. A realization of this priority establishes a relationship that will serve as a basis for gaining information. The investigators might even set up an appointment and say, "We'll be back next Wednesday, and we'd like to talk to you then and see how things are going. Maybe then you'll feel a little differently, and will want to go into the matter a little more." The situation is defined as one of helpfulness, not force, and the victim will repay with information and cooperation because the officers gave her and her family the support they needed in crisis.

In the long run, then, more information is likely to be gained with a little increase in time spent by the investigators. They have established a relationship of trust with the victim and with her family. Their desire to help reciprocally will also lessen the likelihood, so frustrating to the investigators, that if a suspect is arrested, the victim will refuse to cooperate, or that her family will put pressure on her to forget the whole incident.

FURTHER GUIDELINES FOR INVESTIGATION

We have attempted to present here a broad outline of how the theory of crisis intervention may be related to work with victims of rape. This outline has emerged from a blend of psychological theory and the practical experience of officers with whom it has been discussed. In discussing this outline with police officers who have dealt with rape cases, several more specific questions about the best procedures have arisen. In answer to the most common questions, some general guidelines may be presented that seem appropriate for the majority of cases. It is up to investigators, however, to realize that each situation differs and to use their discretion and intuition in determining when these suggestions are appropriate.

1. It is critical that the investigator scrupulously avoid any suggestion of force. This is especially true if the officer is male (and of course, most officers *are* male). Often, in his zeal to complete an investigation, because he is committed to what he is doing and really involved, the officer may be perceived by the victim as aggressive and forcible. In a sense, he is acting toward her essentially as the rapist had acted. The implication is obvious.

2. It is crucial that an authoritative investigator present himself in a benign, nonjudgmental way. This is especially true for the male officer. He must have patience and attempt to create a climax that will allow the individual to bring to the surface the information willingly and naturally. The extra time that this seems to take in the short run will yield more information in the long run because it tends to short-circuit repression.

3. The officer should encourage the victim to talk about what has happened, even though he may find it painful and threatening to have to listen. He may want to probe gently in a later interview for information that may be particularly shameful to the victim or that she may not know how to express. This is particularly true if some form of sexual abuse or sodomy, has or may have, occurred. The officer may say something like, "Very often women tell us other things happened to them, too, things they consider unnatural or find hard to talk about. Did anything like this happen to you?" The officer must be careful, at the same time, not to suggest things to a victim who may lie or remember incorrectly in an effort to please him. A very gentle approach, perhaps a bit off-handed, not intense probing, may prevent the tendency to induce suggested conformity.

4. The most appropriate place for interrogation differs with the circumstances. No relationship or encounter occurs in a void. It happens in a setting and the setting often determines what happens in it. Generally, the home is the best place for an interrogation, especially if the rape did not occur there and the victim has not expressed a desire that her family not know about the crime. The home is the extension of the self, and if the interview can be done privately, within the home, it often adds to the victim's sense of safety and security. If the officer is in doubt it often is appropriate to ask, "Where would you feel most comfortable talking about this?" The station house usually is the worst place. It is an environment that is conducive neither to the sense of comfort nor of ease.

⁷This must be so in all cases, even if the victim does not tell her family about the crime, the changes that will almost inevitably be produced in her behavior as a result of the crisis will become obvious to those close to her. They will wonder what is wrong and be upset by these changes for which they can see no reason.

5. The question of place leads to the problem of the presence of others, and the necessity, often, of dealing with the family as well as with the victim. Most victims are part of a social network, and their reactions to a crisis will necessarily affect the way they relate to others, whether the others are told directly about the crisis or not. A victim may be afraid to tell her husband about the rape, but he cannot help but notice that her behavior has changed, that something is wrong, and this will, in turn, influence his behavior toward her, often in ways that make the crisis worse for her.

6. The victim always should be seen privately. Even the most well-meaning relative or friend will be upset by the situation and will tend to try to cut off the victim's need to ventilate. If the interview is in the home and the family members seem particularly anxious, it is sometimes helpful to interview the other members of the family first. This should be done without the victim in the room and for the purpose of assuring family members that both they and the victim are blameless. It is important that the authority make clear that the victim acted correctly because she is still alive. It is important, too, to reflect for them something of what they are feeling. They then may be enlisted as helpers in the investigative process.

7. If the victim comes to the station alone to report the crime, she may want and need support in dealing with her family. It is appropriate to ask if she would like to be taken home and have the officer help her explain the situation to her family. At any rate, given the nature of the social view of this crime, the meaning the crime has for the victim (i.e. violation of self), and the effect upon the person, it is very important that the privacy of the relationship with that immediate authority be uncomplicated by any other relationship. It should be developed in the context of confidentiality and closeness. If the officer establishes a good relationship with the family so that they understand the crime and its significance to the victim, then they have a way of dealing with the situation. This enables them to relate to the victim with

the same sense of compassion and understanding that they have just received.

8. In later interviews, the officer assigned to the case may help the victim by de-mystifying the court procedure to her in a supportive way. He may also give her the names of organizations that have been formed to help the victims of rape. In New York City, for example, members of women's organizations familiar with the court procedure are available to supportively accompany the victim through the complexities of the legal process.

9. A frequently asked question is whether the officer assigned to the victim of a rape should be male or female. The reality in most police departments in this country is that the bulk of work is done by male officers. Even if one wanted to refer the victim to a female investigator such an officer may not be available. If the victim specifically and spontaneously requests a female officer, every attempt should be made to provide one for her. However, there is some feeling that there are advantages to having a sensitive male officer deal with the case. An understanding, supportive male at this time may help the victim overcome a natural aversive reaction to men. That is, she sees, at a time when such an experience is vital, that not all men are aggressive and harmful. This may ease her job of relating to the other men in her life. In any case, more important than the sex of the investigator is the individual officer's crisis intervention and investigative competence.

SUMMARY

In this brief presentation we have attempted to place the crime of forcible rape in the context of crisis theory. An understanding of human crisis and of crisis intervention techniques by an investigating police officer can immeasurably aid the rape victim in preserving her psychological integrity and also aid the investigating officer in the apprehension of the offender and in the preparation of a case that will stand up in court.

APPENDIX ONE-B

*Interviewing the Rape Victim**

The interview of a rape victim requires exceptionally intimate communication between the police officer and a victim who has been physically and psychologically assaulted. As such, the investigative nature of the interview represents only one dimension of the officer's responsibility. By conducting the interview tactfully and compassionately — and with an understanding of the victim's psychological condition — the officer can avoid intensifying the victim's emotional suffering. At the same time, the cooperation of the victim is gained and the investigative process is thereby made easier.

Law enforcement authorities agree that, for a number of reasons, rape is the most underreported crime in the United States. Because of the highly personal nature of rape, many victims are too embarrassed to report the crime. They would rather forget the incident than discuss it. In some instances, the rapist may be a relative or family friend, and therefore the victim is reluctant to file a complaint. Some victims do not contact the police because they fear that the investigative, medical, and prosecutorial procedures followed in a rape case are as psychologically traumatic as the crime itself.

The legal process that the rape victim encounters is unfamiliar to her and, under the circumstances, emotionally threatening. The police interview, in which the victim necessarily relives the crime by giving a detailed account of the rape and answers intimate questions, is followed by the courtroom trial where she can be subjected to an intimidating cross-examination by the defense lawyer. The legal process may take years to complete, constantly reminding the victim of the experience and making her relive it each time.

As the initial step in the legal process, therefore, the police interview should be more than an investigative inquiry. It should also be used to acquaint the victim with the complicated legal and medical system that she will encounter.

Important to the successful interview is the officer's understanding of the emotional condition of a rape victim. When interviewing a victim, the officer should not regard rape as solely a physical sexual assault. He should consider the psychological effects rape has on its victims. Often the lasting scar of rape is an emotional one, leading to marital problems, mental illness — even suicide.

PSYCHOLOGICAL REACTIONS OF VICTIMS

SELF-CONCEPT: Except for homicide, rape is the most serious violation of a person's body because it deprives the victim of both physical and emotional privacy and autonomy. When rape occurs, the victim's ego or sense of self as well as her body is penetrated and used without consent. She has lost the most basic human need and right: control of physical and emotional self.

Perhaps most damaging to her self-concept is the intrusion of her inner space. Psychologically, it does not matter which orifice has been violated. Symbolically, breachment of any one represents to the victim a forced entry into her ego.¹

Police officers should be aware that the rape victim has been forced to experience an event that, from her viewpoint, is emotionally asexual. The victim's psychological response to rape primarily reflects her reaction to violation of self. As such, it is extremely important that police officers view rape as an emotional as well as a physical assault.² This is true regardless of the moral reputation of the victim. Even prostitutes, who regularly sell their bodies, will experience the psychological violation of self when raped.

RESPONSE TO INTERVIEW: The way in which rape victims respond to the interview situation is varied, depending on their physical condition and individual psychological makeup. The verbal styles of the victims can range from quiet and guarded to talkative. Some victims find it extremely difficult to talk about the rape, perhaps because of the personal nature of the subject or because they are uncommunicative while under pressure. Others find relief in discussing the details of the rape. Often a victim will exhibit both patterns during the course of an interview.

The two verbal patterns frequently displayed by rape victims during an interview are indicative of general emotional states that are commonly associated with the psychological effects of rape. The victim may respond to the crime in an expressed manner; that is, she verbally and physically exhibits fear, anger, and anxiety. Or, the victim may respond in a controlled behavior pattern. In this pattern the victim hides her feelings and outwardly appears to be calm, composed, or subdued.

A number of rape victims will show their feelings through physical manifestations of expressed reaction. Crying, shaking, restlessness, tenseness — all are means of expression that accompany discussion of the crime, especially the more painful details. Some women may react by smiling or laughing. They do so to avoid their true feelings. Comments such as "really, nothing is wrong with me" combined with laughter serve as a substitute for the distressing memory of the attack.

Rape victims who are composed and able to calmly discuss the rape are usually controlling their true feelings. Presenting a strong controlled appearance during a personal crisis may be the way they cope with stress. In some cases, however, the victim's state of calmness may result from physical exhaustion rather than a conscious effort to remain composed. Because many rapes occur at night, victims are frequently exhausted, not having slept since the previous night.

A silent reaction on the part of the victim may also be encountered. The officer needs to realize that silence does not mean that the victim is hiding facts. It does mean that she is having a difficult time in starting to talk about the incident.

Another emotional reaction of rape victims is to express shock that the incident occurred. Statements such as "I can't believe it happened," "It doesn't seem real," or "I just want to forget it" are common psychological responses to the trauma of rape.

Although there is no doubt that general emotional reactions to rape vary among individuals, there does seem to be one common psychological denominator: fear. Experienced police officers have often observed that the victim has feared for her life during the rape, that she viewed the rapist as a potential murderer. In most cases, the emotional reaction to this fear does not dissipate by the time of the interview.

Regardless of the victim's emotional reaction and its observable manifestations to the crime, the interview itself creates additional anxiety. In many cases, the victim is totally ignorant of police procedures; perhaps she has never before talked with a police officer. The only certain thing is that she will have to discuss with a "stranger" the details of what is probably the most traumatic experience of her life. This produces a conflict within the victim: She *knows* that to make possible an investigation, the details of the rape must be discussed, but she *feels* apprehensive about describing the experience.

*This excerpt is reprinted from *Training Key #210* with the permission of the International Association of Chiefs of Police.

¹Morton Bard and Katherine Ellison, "Crisis Intervention and Investigation of Forcible Rape," *Police Chief* (IACP, Gaithersburg, Md.) May 1974, p. 71.

²*Ibid.*, p. 71.

The character of the emotional stress that the victim experiences when she describes the rape is perhaps frequently misunderstood. To recount the details of the rape, the victim must mentally relive the incident. In most cases, the victim's psychological defenses will interfere with her ability and desire to remember what occurred. The victim may not be able to recall certain parts of the attack, or she may consciously change certain facts or omit them. The officer must exercise great patience and understanding in eliciting from the victim the necessary details of an experience she does not want to relive. Officers need to realize that this "reliving" of the experience, if not properly handled, can amount to a psychological rape of the victim.

Another important factor is that the interview should be thoroughly conducted. The officer should gather complete information during the in-depth interview; thus he avoids the need to repeatedly question the victim at later dates. This constant re-interviewing in effect requires the victim to relive the experience again and again. To avoid repeated interviews, the officer must overcome some victims' reluctance and difficulty to talk by conducting a structured interview.

THE INTERVIEW

The investigative goal of the police officer in interviewing a rape victim is to determine if and how the crime occurred. It is from the statements made by the victim to the officer that the essential elements of the offense and the direction of the investigation are established.

Because the interview process may be considered as a routine operation, the police officer may, if not careful, project the feeling of not being concerned with the victim as a person. The danger is that the victim may be left with the impression that she is being treated as an object of physical evidence rather than as a person. The officer cannot allow this to happen. It is during the personal and sensitive communication of the interview that the victim's cooperation is gained and her emotional well-being is maintained. If the officer treats the victim impersonally, he will not gain her confidence and the interview will be unsuccessful. The officer may also cause the victim further emotional stress.

OFFICER'S ATTITUDE: When interviewing a rape victim, the officer must realize that, from the victim's viewpoint, what has occurred has not only been a violent sexual intercourse but also a perverted invasion of her self. Further, the officer must be constantly aware of his own sexual attitudes and the subtle and not so subtle ways in which they emerge. Special care should be exercised so that the rape victim is not placed in the position of perceiving herself as being guilty because of the personal nature of the crime and the social stigma attached to it. A professional bearing throughout the interview will help the officer obtain an accurate report of the crime without causing the victim to experience unnecessary anxiety.

PHYSICAL COMFORT: It is unreasonable to expect a rape victim to respond to detailed questioning while she is uncomfortable or in physical pain. The victim may have been beaten as well as raped. Frequently, the rape has occurred outdoors, and the victim and her clothing have been soiled. Sometimes the victim has been urinated on or has been forced to commit oral sex. Under conditions such as these, the preliminary interview should be brief, and the in-depth follow-up interview should be conducted after the victim has been medically examined and treated, and her personal needs such as washing and changing clothes have been met.

SETTING: The interview should take place in a comfortable setting where there is privacy and freedom from distraction. Places such as a crowded office where the interview is subject to interruption are inappropriate. A rape victim finds it difficult to discuss the intimate details of the crime with the interviewer; her reluctance to talk will greatly increase if there are other people present. She should be isolated from everyone. This includes friends, children, husband, boyfriends, and other victims.

It is often desirable that a policewoman conduct the interview. In some incidents, particularly with a juvenile, a rape victim can more easily discuss the crime with a woman than with a man. In most jurisdictions, however, use of a female officer is not possible. However, the police should consider the utilization of the presence of a trained female, such as a nurse or social worker, to help to ease the victim's embarrassment and anxiety.

OPENING REMARKS: To most rape victims, the interviewing officer is not just a police officer. The officer is also an official representative of society, probably the first representative met during a legal process that traditionally has placed a moral burden on rape victims. As such, the officer may symbolize to the victim the entire society. His behavior may represent to the victim the general attitude of the community toward her plight. If the officer is callous, accusatory in manner or speech, the victim may leave the interview fully expecting society — and perhaps even her family — to react in the same way. In addition, the victim may begin to, or further, question her own motives and therefore feel unnecessary guilt.

At this critical point, when the officer should presume that his attitudes are being expressed to the victim, he must gain her confidence by letting her know that a major part of his function is to help and protect her. He should make plain his sympathy for and interest in the victim. By doing this, the officer contributes to the immediate and long-term emotional health of the victim. He also lays the foundation of mutual cooperation and respect on which is built the effective interview.

"VENTILATION" PERIOD: Following the opening remarks, the officer should allow the victim to discuss whatever she wants. This "ventilation" period gives the victim an opportunity to relieve emotional tension. During this time, the officer should listen carefully to the victim, but he should be aware that any initial description of the incident may be colored by the trauma of the experience. Everyone's perception of reality is altered by extreme stress.

INVESTIGATIVE QUESTIONING: After the necessary ventilation period, the victim should be allowed to describe what occurred in her own words and without interruption. As the victim tells the story of the rape, she will also tell a great deal about herself. Her mood and general reaction, her choice of words, and her comments on unrelated matters can be useful in evaluating the facts of the case. It is important in such an interview that the police officer be humane, sympathetic, and patient. He should be alert to inconsistencies in the victim's statement. If the victim's story differs from the originally reported facts, the officer should point out the discrepancies and ask her to explain them in greater detail. The officer should phrase his questions in simple language, making sure that he is understood. It is best if the questions are presented in a manner that encourages conversation rather than implies interrogation.

Often the rape victim will omit embarrassing details from her description of the crime. Officers should expect a certain amount of reluctance on the part of the victim to describe unpleasant facts. The officer should explain that certain information must be discussed to satisfy the legal aspects of rape and pursue the investigation. He may add that the same questions will be asked in court if the case results in a trial.

In a majority of cases the attack is premeditated, and about half the time the rapist has known or has seen the victim before the assault. Because of this, certain types of questions should be asked.

The victim should be asked if, and how long, she has been acquainted with the offender. The circumstances of their meeting and the extent of their previous relationship, including any prior sexual relations, should be discussed. Although previous sexual acts with the accused will not absolve the offender at this particular time, knowledge of them helps to establish the validity of the complaint. Along these same lines, the officer should determine if the victim has ever made a charge of this nature in the past; review of previous records, if any, will provide insight to the present complaint.

Where it is determined that the victim has known the rapist prior to the incident, he should be identified and interviewed. If the offender is unknown, the officer must get a detailed description of him including clothing, speech, and mannerisms. The officer should determine whether the offender had accomplices or revealed any personal facts such as area of residence or places he frequented. Questions such as "Was anyone else present when first meeting or being attacked by the rapist?" should be asked. Did the offender use a weapon? What type? What kind of vehicle did he drive? After obtaining all the possible information about the unknown rapist, the officer will begin his search to identify him.

INTERVIEW'S END: As a result of having been raped, some victims suffer long-range emotional problems. At his discretion, the police officer may suggest that the victim seek assistance from an appropriate counseling agency, family physician, psychologist, or clergyman. In addition, the officer may explain to the victim's family the emotional suffering rape victims typically encounter.

SUMMARY

From the information given by the rape victim during the

interview is developed the investigative direction of the case. Without these facts, as personal and unpleasant as they always are to recount, police investigation of the crime cannot proceed.

The manner in which the interview is conducted is vital to the emotional health of the victim. The police officer should be aware that the rape victim has been assaulted psychologically as well as physically. In conducting all phases of the interview, he should keep the well-being of the victim uppermost in his mind by acting tactfully and compassionately.

CHAPTER TWO

THE MEDICAL TREATMENT OF SEXUAL ASSAULT VICTIMS

CHAPTER TWO

**THE MEDICAL TREATMENT
OF SEXUAL ASSAULT VICTIMS**

I. Introduction	29
II. General Principles	29
A. Philosophy	29
B. Privacy	29
C. Patient Priority	29
D. Victim Participation in Decision-Making	30
E. Reporting	30
F. Cost of Treatment	30
III. Pre-examination Considerations	30
A. The Victim	30
1. Meeting the Immediate Needs of the Victim	30
2. Preparing the Victim for Examination	31
B. Consent Forms, Release of Evidence and Confidentiality ..	31
IV. Duties and Responsibilities of Medical Personnel	32
A. The Medical Team	32
1. The Victim Support Person	32
2. The Emergency Room Nurse	33
3. The Physician	33
B. Guide to Medical Testimony in a Criminal Prosecution ..	34
V. Examination and Treatment of the Victim	35
A. Obtaining the History	35
B. The Evidentiary Examination	36
1. The Victim's Clothing	36
2. The Physical Examination	36
a. Assessment of Injuries	36
b. Treatment of Injuries	36
c. Pelvic and Rectal Examination	37

3. Laboratory Tests	37
a. Samples for Laboratory Testing	37
b. Evidence Check-Off List	39
4. Instruments and Equipment	40
5. Protection of Chain of Custody of Evidence	40
6. Completion of Medical Records	41
C. Prevention of Disease	41
1. Informing the Victim	41
2. Follow-up Tests	41
3. Medical Treatment for Venereal Disease	42
D. Pregnancy	42
E. Follow-Up	43
1. Medical Follow-Up	43
2. Counseling Follow-Up	44
Appendix	
A. Authorization for Release of Medical Information for Victims of Sexual Assault	47
B. Hennepin County Medical Center Emergency Department Nursing Sexual Assault Report	49
C. Protection of Chain of Custody of Evidence — Sample Form	51
D. Bureau of Criminal Apprehension (BCA) Laboratory Capability	53

THE MEDICAL TREATMENT OF SEXUAL ASSAULT VICTIMS

I. INTRODUCTION

The following guidelines are intended for use by medical personnel and medical facilities throughout the State of Minnesota. The guidelines are intended to be adapted to each community, taking into consideration the particular needs of that community as well as the extent of medical personnel, services and facilities available.

Since the needs of sexual assault victims cannot be met effectively without the combined efforts of law enforcement, medical, social service and prosecutorial personnel, it is necessary to be aware of the responsibilities of one another in dealing with sexual assault victims. Therefore, it is recommended that medical personnel be familiar with the guidelines presented elsewhere in this manual for law enforcement, social service and prosecutorial personnel.

This Chapter, *The Medical Treatment of Sexual Assault Victims*, presents basic principles that should govern the medical treatment and examination of sexual assault victims in order to achieve the following goals:

- 1) Treatment of injuries
- 2) Care of the victim's immediate emotional needs
- 3) Diagnosis and treatment of disease
- 4) Diagnosis and treatment of pregnancy
- 5) Prevention of future psychological trauma
- 6) Proper collection of evidence for possible use in legal proceedings

The chapter includes a discussion for pre-examination considerations such as the victim's immediate needs, use of consent forms, confidentiality, and the release of evidence. It also contains the duties and responsibilities of the various hospital/medical personnel. The specifics of examining and treating the victim of sexual assault are also presented.

II. GENERAL PRINCIPLES

A. *Philosophy*

Every victim of sexual assault has the right to be treated with respect and dignity while receiving proper medical care. The quality of care as well as the legal redress available to the victim will depend, in part, upon the procedures of the medical facility and the attitudes of medical personnel.

B. *Privacy*

A private and comfortable room is desirable as a waiting facility for victims of sexual assault. Interviews and administrative procedures should be completed there.

C. *Patient Priority*

The victim of sexual assault should be treated as a medical emergency and accorded the *highest possible priority* (next only to life-threatening situations) in the emergency room. The victim should be interviewed promptly to determine the urgency of his/her physical and emotional needs. In addition, evidence must be gathered and laboratory tests initiated as soon as possible after the sexual assault for maximum effect.

D. *Victim Participation in Decision-Making*

Because the victim of sexual assault has just been through an experience during which control over his/her life was temporarily in the hands of someone else, it is critical throughout the medical treatment process to assist the victim in regaining a sense of control by involving him/her in decision-making with regard to treatment and examination. The victim should be presented with all the options possible in order to make a meaningful choice regarding treatment.

E. *Reporting*

The hospital should not condition its willingness to provide medical treatment on the victim's intention to report the crime to the police. If the victim has not made a decision regarding reporting, the advantages and disadvantages of reporting and of participating in prosecution of the offender should be discussed with the victim. The victim should be informed that reporting the crime does not obligate him/her to participate in prosecution. However, the ultimate choice of whether or not to report must remain with the victim.

If the victim is unsure about reporting, he/she should be encouraged to have a complete evidentiary examination since evidence may be lost permanently if tests are delayed. However, the victim should be made aware of the county's policy concerning payment of the evidentiary examination in regard to reporting (see the following section, Cost of Treatment).

If the victim has decided not to report to the police he/she should be examined for physical injury, possible pregnancy and possible venereal disease. The victim should also be advised of the availability of anonymous (third party) reporting procedures, if they exist in the community.

F. *Cost of Treatment**

Minnesota Statute 609.35 provides that the cost of an examination for the purpose of gathering evidence must be paid by the county in which the offense occurred. Some counties require the victim to report the sexual assault to the police before they will assume the expense of the examination. The victim should be informed of this. If the decision is made not to report to the police, alternative billing arrangements should be made with the victim. He/she should be provided with information about whom to contact with any questions about costs or billing.

III. PRE-EXAMINATION CONSIDERATIONS

A. *The Victim*

Sexual assault is a traumatic, life-threatening experience which usually leaves the victim feeling humiliated, degraded, distrustful, afraid and angry. Every victim responds to the experience in a different way. Some victims may appear relatively calm while others may be crying hysterically. (A thorough description of the victim's feelings and responses to sexual assault is presented in Chapter Three, **Counseling the Victim of Sexual Assault.**)

Emotional support and understanding of the victim, as well as of significant others is a prerequisite to good medical care.

1. *Meeting the Immediate Needs of the Victim.* When the victim arrives at the medical facility, he/she should be met in a specified area by a support person, whether

*See also Chapter Four, Appendix B. The Minnesota Crime Victims Reparations Law.

that be a social worker, an emergency room nurse, a community health worker, a trained paraprofessional or a volunteer.

The victim's first need, beyond the care of any emergency physical injury, is to feel safe and to be made comfortable. Arranging for the physical comfort of the victim may be as simple as providing a glass of water, tissues or a place to wash and change clothes after the physical examination. The victim also needs to be informed about the procedures to take place during the examination and to be involved in decisions regarding consent forms, etc. However, information regarding cost of treatment should be discussed with the victim after the examination is completed. The victim may also need assistance with informing family or friends and obtaining clothing and transportation home.

One of the victim's greatest needs is for emotional support. He/she needs to be treated as a total person with self respect, to feel in control, not alone, and to have an empathic, understanding listener who will help him/her express feelings about the sexual assault.

2. *Preparing the Victim for Examination.* An important part of preparing the victim for the physical examination is to find out if he/she has ever been examined. For some victims this may be the first pelvic or rectal examination. The victim needs to know what is expected of him/her and what the physician will be doing and why. Often the physician will explain this, but reinforcement by the nurse or support person will help the victim feel involved instead of feeling like an object of things being done to him/her. Since the victim has just been through an experience which he/she did not consent to, it is essential to avoid any hint of force but rather to encourage the victim's cooperation in the various aspects of the medical treatment.

B. *Consent Forms, Release of Evidence and Confidentiality*

The importance and effect of the consent forms should be explained to the victim prior to any examination or treatment. This will enable the victim to make an informed choice about treatment as well as making a police report.

1. *Consent for Examination and Treatment.* Consent for examination and treatment should be obtained from the victim prior to examination and treatment. Such consent should be separate from the authorization for release of information. It should cover the examination and the collection of specimens needed for hospital as well as evidentiary purposes.
2. *Authorization for Release of Information and Evidence.* All information and evidence should be retained by the medical facility and should be released *only* upon specific written consent of the victim. Information and evidence includes medical record services, slides, x-rays, clothing, photographs, etc., relative to this incident.

The victim's authorization for the release of information and evidence to the police should be separate from the victim's consent for examination. (A sample Authorization for Release for Information form is provided in Appendix A of this chapter.

3. *Confidentiality.* The medical facility should be aware of its possible liability for disclosure of confidential information about the victim to someone outside the hospital — even the police. At the present time in Minnesota, county and city hospitals are governed by the provision of the Minnesota Government Data Practices Act which requires hospitals to inform the subject exactly what is going to be done with the information gathered, and to obtain a signed consent from the victim

before releasing medical information about the victim to any other agency (Minnesota Statutes 13.02-13.88).

IV. DUTIES AND RESPONSIBILITIES OF MEDICAL PERSONNEL

A. *The Medical Team*

A team approach to providing for the needs of the sexual assault victim by medical personnel is ideal. This approach insures continuity of care but should involve as few staff members as possible. The formation of the team as well as the specific responsibilities of each member will vary with the size of the particular medical facility, the availability of staff, and many other factors. The following discussion of responsibilities is outlined for a team consisting of 1) a victim support person (hospital social worker, nurse, or volunteer), 2) an emergency room nurse, and 3) a physician.

A major responsibility of every member of the medical team is to be aware of his/her own feelings and attitudes about sexual assault. Recognizing that the victim has first been through a life-threatening and humiliating experience, the medical team should provide for the emotional as well as physical well-being of the victim by allowing the victim to talk freely about his/her feelings. Listening to the victim in a non-judgmental supportive way and allowing the victim to regain a sense of control over his/her situation can be essential to the victim's emotional recovery from the assault.

1. *The Victim Support Person.* The victim support person may be hospital social worker, a nurse, a sexual assault counselor or a volunteer. He/she should be knowledgeable of, and ideally be able to continue to support the victim through the medical, law enforcement and, possibly, court procedures. The victim support person may be the key person to provide the continuity of care which can be instrumental for the victim's healthy adjustment after the sexual assault.

There are many functions the support person should be able to perform, including:

- Making initial contact with the victim in a specified area of the hospital.
- Notifying the appropriate physician or confirming that notification has taken place.
- Asking if the victim wants family or friends to be informed and, if so, contacting them.
- Carefully explaining all procedures about to take place, including the purpose of the medical examination and the specific tests needed for gathering medical-legal evidence, the role of the police, the purpose of photographs, the purpose of consent forms, and the availability of follow-up facilities, including sexual assault crisis centers and medical and emotional treatment facilities. It is important that the victim be given an opportunity to make an informed choice regarding all options.
- Explaining the purpose of consent forms and obtaining the necessary written consents.
- Assessing the victim's behavior and functioning. The social worker, nurse, or counselor who performs this function must have adequate training in the psycho-social problems that sexual assault victims and their families experience. After making the initial assessment the support person should be prepared to refer the victim to other agencies or other team members for counseling, if the victim so chooses.
- Asking the victim whether he/she needs clothing or transportation and making these arrangements for him/her.

- Providing other services, including information about making a report to the police or third-party reporting services.
 - Maintaining a follow-up contact with the victim for on-going support, referral, etc.
2. *The Emergency Room Nurse.* In order to facilitate the care of the victim and to provide empathic ongoing support, it seems appropriate to designate a registered nurse as the primary care emergency department staff member. The specific responsibilities of the emergency room nurse will depend upon his/her role on the medical team. In many cases, the nurse will also be designated the victim support person, providing many of the supportive services described above.

Additional responsibilities of the nurse should include:

- Providing an examining area where the victim can be registered in private.
 - Further clarifying all procedures about to take place, presenting the victim with all of the options and involving him/her in the decision-making in regard to treatment and examination.
 - Participating in whatever history-taking is designated as his/her responsibility.
 - Assisting in whatever external examination is designated as his/her responsibility.
 - Maintaining the chain of custody of evidence for specimens he/she is designated to collect.
 - Remaining with the victim as much of the time as possible, explaining the reason for his/her absence if the victim has to be left alone.
 - Arranging for a medical appointment for follow-up venereal disease detection. Whenever possible, the victim should be phoned prior to the follow-up and reminded to attend. If this appointment is missed, it is essential to contact the victim to arrange another appointment.
3. *The Physician.* The physician performing an examination in a sexual assault case has a dual role. In addition to being sensitive to and providing for the emotional and physical needs of the victim, the physician is the key person on the medical team responsible for gathering all of the available medical evidence and providing a permanent record of all aspects of the examination in the event of future prosecution. Such an examination can provide extremely important legal evidence in a criminal prosecution and must be carefully recorded in detail.

The physician performing the examination should be licensed to practice in the State of Minnesota or must be at least a resident who is eligible for licensing. A first year resident is *not* qualified for licensing and, therefore, is *not* a medical expert qualified to give expert medical opinions or conclusions in court.

The specific responsibilities of the examining physician should include:

- Clarifying to the victim the procedures that will be followed, presenting the victim with all of the options and involving him/her in the decision-making with regard to treatment and examination.
- Obtaining a medical history. If this is the emergency room nurse's designated responsibility the physician should review the nurse's record, discuss it with the victim and, if necessary, elaborate on it in writing on the record.
- Conducting a general physical examination.
- Performing a pelvic examination. The physician should forewarn the victim if the procedure is apt to produce discomfort, pain, or a "tension response" and

should assist the victim in relaxing as much as possible throughout the examination. This is particularly critical if this is the victim's first pelvic examination.

- Collecting specimens for laboratory examination.
- Completing the medical report.

Physicians in private practice may frequently choose to refer a sexual assault victim to a hospital emergency department which has established procedures for an evidence gathering examination. However, the necessity for prompt examination or the victim's emotional response may sometimes preclude such a referral. In such cases the private physician should be aware of the importance of providing for the emotional as well as physical needs of the victim, collecting the evidence, protecting the chain of custody of evidence, and possibly testifying at trial.

B. *Guide to Medical Testimony in a Criminal Prosecution*

Although the following section is addressed to the examining physician, other medical personnel, such as the nurse, social worker, or laboratory personnel, should also be aware of these guidelines. In many instances, they will be the key medical witnesses testifying and will be recognized as experts in their field.

1. *The examining physician* is usually subpoenaed in only a small fraction of the total cases in which he/she performs evidentiary examinations that could lead to criminal prosecution. If the subpoena is for a District Court case, the attorney ordering the subpoena will probably inform the physician that testimony will not be needed on the date and time specified on the subpoena. A subpoena continues in effect until the matter in litigation is completed. However, if a District Court subpoena comes from the prosecutor, it must request the physician's presence on the date and time that the trial is scheduled to begin. Most felony trials begin with a constitutional hearing, followed by selection of a jury prior to any testimony being taken. These proceedings may take several days. In any case, it should be possible to schedule the physician's appearance to some extent, such as morning or afternoon or an alternative of two possible days to testify. All of this must be arranged with the attorney who is handling the case.
2. *Preparing to Testify.* The examining physician should obtain the name of the victim/patient and hospital number from the attorney who is responsible for the subpoena (the attorney's name will usually appear on the subpoena itself). He/she should then review the medical records trying to recall the details of the case and his/her findings. As the medical expert the physician will have to explain the medical findings, opinions, and conclusions in terms that the jury, judge and lawyers can understand. Once the physician has reviewed the medical records and findings of the case, he/she should meet with the prosecuting attorney prior to trial to discuss the case and the medical testimony to be given.
3. *Testifying.* Any medical witness will necessarily be questioned concerning his/her qualifications as an expert medical witness — educational background, membership in any professional society, publications, number of sexual assault victims treated, etc. A resume should be prepared in advance of testifying.

The medical witness will be allowed to refer to his/her medical report while testifying if it will refresh his/her memory. He/she should be prepared to relate the following in detail:

- a. Initial contact with the victim/patient including the history and observations of the patient's physical, emotional and mental condition.

- b. All details of the physical examination, including vital signs, the external examination, internal pelvic and laboratory specimens collected and what was done with each of the specimens, together with anything else that may have been done such as ordering x-rays, etc.
- c. Explanation of all technical terms as well as interpretation of all tests performed and the laboratory results of those tests. If the physician is unsure of his/her ability to interpret the tests, he/she should speak with a hospital pathologist and become familiar with the interpretation of the tests.
- d. Each question should be answered fully and truthfully. In general:
 - 1) If you don't know the answer to a question, say so.
 - 2) If you don't understand a question, ask to have it repeated or rephrased.
 - 3) Respond only to the question asked and do not elaborate beyond the question asked.
 - 4) If you are asked a question demanding a "yes" or "no" answer, which cannot be answered merely "yes" or "no", but instead demands an explanation, say so.
 - 5) Do not go out on a limb, claiming certainty of an answer when you are, in fact, uncertain, because a skillful cross-examiner will then be able to destroy the effect of all your testimony.
 - 6) The opposing counsel may ask: "Do you recognize (a certain publication) as an authority in this field?" If you are familiar with the work, say so, but never advocate any given work as the definitive source for the field.
 - 7) Remember that you will be cross-examined fully by the opposing counsel. The value of your testimony depends entirely upon your ability to clearly state your medical findings in such a way that they are virtually unimpeachable.

V. EXAMINATION AND TREATMENT OF THE VICTIM

In general, family members should not be present during the examination. The victim may not be free with the physician about medical history and the assault itself with the family members present, because such a history may include matters that the victim does not want the family to know. In addition, family members will often be very upset and may vent their anger against the victim rather than providing the support he/she needs.

A. *Obtaining the History*

A complete history should be obtained by the examining physician or nurse (each medical team should designate whose responsibility this is). As the victim goes through the medical treatment process, it is important that personnel who come into contact with him/her recognize the need to keep questions direct and to the point. The victim should not be asked repeatedly to describe what happened and forced to relive the experience again and again. The hospital must decide at the outset what information it needs to obtain and who is to obtain it. The person obtaining the medical history should be concerned only with the history that is related to the victim's condition and the treatment thereof. The basic details of the incident should be elicited from the victim but unnecessary elaboration of the assault should be omitted from the written record. It is usually best to let law enforcement personnel take the detailed report.

The history should include:

- 1) Pertinent aspects of the incident:
 - a) Date, time, place

- b) Body orifices involved
- c) Ejaculation (yes/no; where on the body)
- d) Contraceptive devices used
- 2) Parity
- 3) Menstrual history:
 - a) Last menstrual period
 - b) Any abnormalities
 - c) Usual length
- 4) Date of last Pap smear
- 5) Time of last intercourse if within 24–36 hours prior to the sexual assault
- 6) Current meds, contraceptives, etc.
- 7) Identification of physical injuries (significant injuries should be photographed)

B. *The Evidentiary Examination*

Obtaining materials of an evidentiary nature should be the combined responsibility of the examining physician and the examining nurse, although the specific evidence that each one is responsible for collecting should be clearly designated in advance. Each item of evidence should be labeled. Each label should have the patient's name, hospital identification number, date and time of collection, collector's name and anatomic source of the specimen.

1. *The Victim's Clothing*

- a. The victim's clothing should be removed and observed for the presence of stains, tears, missing buttons, dirt, grass stains, semen, etc.
- b. The clothing should be properly labeled and secured for the police. If the clothing is wet, air dry before placing in brown paper bags. Do not use plastic bags since this promotes bacterial growth and putrefication.
- c. The name and signature of the authorized person (police officer) receiving clothing should be obtained and included in the chart.
- d. The victim should be provided with a change of clothes before leaving the medical facility.

2. *The Physical Examination*

- a. *Assessment of Injuries* — The assessment of injuries should include the following recorded observations:
 - 1) The general physical appearance and demeanor of the victim.
 - 2) The vital signs, i.e. pulse, blood pressure, temperature, and respiration rate.
 - 3) The presence or absence of marks of violence on the body, their character and position. The skin should be examined for bruises, scratches, lacerations, rope imprints, tooth imprints, pressure imprints, and points of tenderness. Photographs should be taken and/or anatomical drawings made of any affected area.
- b. *Treatment of Injuries*
 - 1) Most minor trauma is relieved by cold compresses, and mild analgesia.
 - 2) If skin is broken, insure tetanus immunization.
 - 3) Serious hemorrhage necessitates control and resuscitation of any volume of blood deficit. An experienced gynecological surgeon should be summoned if extensive vaginal laceration is suspected.

c. *Pelvic and Rectal Examination* — A speculum examination should be completed with a description of vaginal mucosa and vaginal secretions, as well as any evidence of trauma. An examination and description should also be completed of the cervix, uterus, adnexa, and rectal region for other abnormalities. The pelvic and rectal examination will also include obtaining samples for evidentiary purposes (see the following section, Laboratory Tests).

3. *Laboratory Tests*. The collection and handling of specimens obtained in the examination of the sexual assault victim depends on what laboratory testing is to be done, and whether the testing will be done in part by the hospital laboratory, or whether all testing will be done by the Crime Laboratory at the Minnesota Bureau of Criminal Apprehension.* The following protocol lists the evidence which should always be obtained for the Crime Laboratory as well as other suggested items that the hospital laboratory can use in additional examinations.

A Sexual Assault Evidentiary Examination Kit is available in Minnesota which contains materials needed for obtaining samples for laboratory testing. Each kit may be sealed and comes with an attached form to be used for protecting the chain of custody of evidence. Kits are available upon request from the Bureau of Criminal Apprehension.*

a. *Samples for Laboratory Testing*.

- 1) BLOOD — (two tubes; one for crime laboratory and one for hospital). Draw a tube of venous blood for crime laboratory using an anti-coagulant tube (grey top). The blood sample is used to determine the victim's blood type and enzyme characteristics for comparison with those of the assailant. If it is determined that a serologic test should be performed a second blood sample is drawn in a serum tube (red top) for the hospital VD testing.
- 2) SALIVA — (one sample for crime laboratory). Sample of saliva on a clean gauze square is used to determine the victim's secretor status, i.e. whether or not the victim secretes his/her blood group substances in body secretions. It is imperative that no one but the victim touch the gauze, since perspiration from another "secretor" could contaminate the sample. Have the patient place a sterile 1x1 gauze square in his/her mouth and saturate it with saliva. Have the patient place the gauze on a glass slide and allow the sample to air dry. When the gauze is dry, put the glass slide and the gauze in a small manila envelope, identify, seal (DO NOT LICK THE ENVELOPE FLAP SINCE THIS COULD ALSO BE A SOURCE OF CONTAMINATION), initial or sign across the envelope flap. *Reminder*: No one but the victim should handle the gauze.
- 3) VAGINAL SWABS — (crime laboratory sample). Swabbings of the vaginal vault (or other body areas where ejaculation may have taken place) are used to detect sperm, and to collect material for enzyme evaluation. The enzyme characteristics of the sample taken could potentially be compared with those of various suspects, or the defendant.

Swab the vaginal vault with a dry cotton-tipped applicator stick. This swab should be used to make a smear on a clean glass microscope slide. Allow the slide and swab to air dry. Place the slide in a slide mailer, and place the swab in an envelope. Identify the source, seal, and initial the containers. Swabs

*1246 University, St. Paul, Minnesota 55104.

should also be taken and slides made of other suspected areas such as the oral cavity, the anus/rectum, and suspicious skin areas. (Do not chemically fix the slide or use saline to moisten the applicators prior to use. This is in distinct contrast to the procedure recommended for hospital examination).

4) VAGINAL SWABS — (hospital sample). Several vaginal swabs are to be collected and these can be used for several laboratory examinations.

a. *Wet Preparation.* Use a sterile cotton tipped applicator and swab the vaginal vault. The cotton should be thoroughly saturated with vaginal fluid and should be agitated in 3 cc's of sterile saline. The saline should contain no preservatives (blood bank saline is recommended). The swab is twirled within the saline and wrung out on the edge of the test tube. The swab should be discarded since the cotton fibers tend to cause sperm deterioration. The sample should be stoppered and submitted to the laboratory. A drop or two of the suspension should be examined without staining under the microscope for the presence of sperm. If sperm are noted, the specimen should be warmed to 37 degrees centigrade for ten minutes in the blood bank incubator and the specimen should be re-examined to evaluate sperm motility. The specimen may be gently centrifuged to concentrate debris for examination. The remainder of the fluid can be utilized for the acid phosphatase determination (see below).

b. *Swab for Stained Smear.* A second cotton tipped applicator is introduced into the vaginal vault. The swab should be saturated and material should be rolled and streaked onto a clean glass microscope slide. The specimen should be immediately fixed with pap stain fixative (either fluid or spray fixative is satisfactory). The slide may be submitted to the hospital laboratory for staining and examination for sperm. This slide does *NOT* substitute for a valid cytologic examination.

c. *Smear in Culture for Gonorrhea (optional).* Swabs for bacteriologic purposes can be obtained if the decision is made to culture for gonorrhea at the time of the initial examination. Swabs should be taken from the cervical canal and the vaginal vault. It is suggested that an additional swab from the anus be taken for the greatest diagnostic accuracy. The swabbing should be processed according to the testing procedures of the hospital laboratory, preferably on Thayer-Martin medium.

A cervical smear for intra cellular diplococci may be made but culture is a preferable diagnostic test.

d. *Acid Phosphatase Examination.* The supernatant fluid from the wet preparation above (4a) can be utilized for the acid phosphatase determination. The methodology employed by the hospital laboratory should detect *prostatic* acid phosphatase.

5) VAGINAL ASPIRATE — (crime laboratory sample). Material aspirated from the vagina is used to search for the presence of seminal fluid and to check for the presence of blood group substances for possible comparison with the blood group of the assailant. *After all of the swabs have been collected* a saline washing (3 mm) of the vaginal cavity should be collected and sealed in a marked leakproof container. Three ml of saline should be placed in the container. Identifying data, of course, should be included on the container.

- 6) PREGNANCY TEST — (hospital sample). In most facilities a urine test for pregnancy is readily available. This can be performed if indicated.
 - 7) PUBIC HAIR COMBINGS — (crime laboratory sample). By combing pubic hair of the victim, it is possible to find "foreign" pubic hairs, and it may later be possible to compare these with the pubic hair of the assailant. Comb the pubic area with a clean plastic comb collecting any hairs which are removed by the comb. Place the comb and hairs in an envelope, label the specimen as "pubic combings", seal, identify and initial the sample.
 - 8) PULLED HEAD AND PUBIC HAIRS — (*Need Not Be Taken At Time of Initial Examination!*) Since pubic hair evaluations will be performed only if an assailant is apprehended it is suggested that pubic and head hair samples be collected at a later time. If hairs are requested for comparison purposes by the Crime Laboratory, then a minimum of ten (10) pubic hairs and thirty (30) head hairs should be pulled at random over the pubic area and head. The pubic and head hairs should be sealed in separate marked envelopes.
 - 9) FIBERS OR FOREIGN MATERIAL — (crime laboratory sample). Sometimes seemingly insignificant trace evidence can have a major evidentiary impact. Collect all material on the patient's body which may have originated from someone or something other than the patient; for example, leaves, fibers, hairs or material beneath the fingernails.
 - 10) CLOTHING — (crime laboratory sample). The victim's garments may contain important blood or body fluid stains, and may provide important trace evidence. Collect undergarments of the victim and other clothing which could contain evidence from the assailant. Place each article of the clothing in a separate, clean *paper* bag, seal, identify, and initial.
- b. *Evidence Check-Off List.* Below is a suggested check-off list that can be used by hospitals. The hospital laboratory director should be consulted for laboratory input on collecting evidence for each hospital or medical facility. NOTE: All boxed items are for the crime laboratory (BCA) and should *always* be taken. The other items listed are for the hospital laboratory and should be taken only if they are going to be processed at the hospital.

Evidence Check-Off List

1) Blood samples	_____
a) One tube with anti-coagulant (blood grouping)	_____
b) One serum tube (VD test)	_____
2) Saliva — dried sample on gauze	_____
3) Swabs	_____
a) One vaginal swab and smeared slide	_____
b) Swabbings from other body areas (if semen suspected)	_____
c) One vaginal swab — wet preparation	_____
d) One vaginal swab — stained smear	_____
e) One vaginal swab — culture for gonorrhea	_____
4) Vaginal Aspirate [Note: Take after all above swabbings are complete]	_____
5) Urine sample (Pregnancy test)	_____
6) Pubic Hair Combing	_____
7) Foreign Fibers or Other Material	_____
8) Clothing of Victim	_____

4. *Instruments and Equipment.* The following instruments and equipment should be available to medical personnel involved in a sexual assault examination:

- | | |
|---|---|
| <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ◦ Camera ◦ Bags for clothing ◦ Envelopes and/or other containers for fingernail scrapings, hair samples, etc. ◦ Comb ◦ Woods lamp (ultra-violet lamp) ◦ Vaginal speculum ◦ Cotton swabs ◦ Slides | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ◦ Pap fixative ◦ Diamond pencil ◦ Ring forceps (2) ◦ 1 x 1 gauze (sterile) plus containers ◦ Thayer-Martin plates (3) ◦ Tubes with 3 cc sterile saline ◦ Serum tubes (red top) ◦ Oxalate tubes (grey top) ◦ Urine container |
|---|---|

5. *Protection of Chain of Custody of Evidence.* Once evidence has been collected, it is essential that the "chain of custody" be maintained at all times. The court usually requires that the whereabouts of any evidence to be introduced be accounted for from the time of its collection until the time when the laboratory results are generated. A simple method is to utilize the "locked box" technique. A small box with a padlock (a tackle box or metal tool box equipped with a small padlock is inexpensive and works admirably). It is recommended that as few persons as possible handle the evidence. The materials can be placed in the locked box in the Emergency Room. The box can be transported to the laboratory by the medical technologist or other laboratory representative. The cultures should be placed in a microbiological incubator immediately after reaching the laboratory. All materials to be tested can be retained within the box until testing is complete. If no box is

available, the evidence can be placed in a large paper envelope. The flap should be sealed and identifying data and physician's signature can be written across the flap seal to preserve the chain of evidence. It is essentially impossible to tamper with the contents of the envelope without disturbing the signature as written.

6. *Completion of Medical Records.*

- a. The names of all physicians, nurses, laboratory personnel and police officers who handle any item of evidence or who participate in the examination should be written or printed legibly. It should be kept in mind that the report may be read by a number of other people.
- b. Judgmental statements should not be made, e.g. "The patient appears *unusually* calm". All references to the assault should be brief and factual. Qualifying language such as "alleged" should be avoided. A good format is: "The patient says that. . .".
- c. All specimens should be carefully and accurately labeled and identified with:
 - 1) Patient's name
 - 2) Patient's hospital number
 - 3) Date specimen collected
 - 4) Person collecting sample
 - 5) Person receiving sample
 - 6) A record of the chain of evidence should be kept indicating who collects and receives all items of evidence from start to finish.

C. *Prevention of Disease*

Fear of exposure to venereal disease is a major concern of many sexual assault victims. Tests for the presence of syphilis and gonorrhea should be conducted at the time of the evidentiary examination as well as at follow-up periods. Controversy exists over the routine use of antibiotics for VD prevention without a definitive culture and the final recommendation should be made by the physician. The following procedure is recommended:

1. *Informing the Victim.*

- a. The victim should be informed of the possibility of transmitting VD to sexual partners. He/she should be reminded that VD is transmitted through all mucous membranes (e.g., oral-genital). Sex is not safe until it is determined whether or not the victim has contracted VD and, if so, has finished treatment.
- b. Symptoms of syphilis, gonorrhea and other kinds of venereal disease, including crabs, trichomonas chlamydia, and herpes, should be discussed and a written handout describing these symptoms should be given to the victim.
- c. The need for returning for follow-up tests to determine the presence of VD should be strongly emphasized.

2. *Follow-Up Tests.* The victim should be strongly encouraged to return for a GC culture in 3-8 days and for a test for syphilis in 6-8 weeks. An information sheet should be given to the victim indicating the times for check-ups as well as alternative facilities where VD examinations can be obtained without a charge.

If the perpetrator is known to be sexually active in the community, particularly with males, testing for HTLV3 as an indicator of exposure to the AIDS virus is also justified.

3. *Medical Treatment for Venereal Disease.*

- a. A full medical history including allergies and other medications being used should be obtained from the victim.
- b. If immediate treatment is warranted and consented to by the victim, the appropriate dosage of medication should be administered.
- c. If prophylactic injections are utilized the victim should be kept under observation for 30-60 minutes.

D. *Pregnancy*

The possibility of pregnancy as a result of the sexual assault should be considered a primary medical concern unless the victim has been taking an oral contraceptive regularly, has an intrauterine device, has had a tubal ligation or hysterectomy, was in her menses at the time of the assault, or is not in her reproductive years. Presence or absence of sperm on the wet preparation may be helpful in evaluating the risk of pregnancy if the samples have been taken shortly (less than eight hours) after the assault. Unfortunately, a decision about continuing or terminating a pregnancy may have to be made by the victim when she is still likely to be suffering from the shock and confusion of the sexual assault. Alternatives should be presented clearly, objectively and in a non-threatening manner. Psychological needs and reactions of the victim should be taken into consideration. Ultimately, the decision must be that of the victim. If the victim chooses to continue a pregnancy to term, an appropriate referral should be made. If the victim has made a choice to prevent the pregnancy these alternatives are possible:

- 1) A menstrual extraction may be performed.
- 2) Some form of postcoital medication may be administered.
- 3) Insertion of an IUD.
- 4) The victim can wait and see if she is, in fact, pregnant and have an abortion, if desired.

The following considerations should be kept in mind regarding these options:

- 1) *Menstrual Extraction.* This is a procedure in which the endometrial lining of the uterus is removed by insertion of a flexible plastic cannula through the cervical canal into the uterus. Suction is applied through the cannula as it is moved about within the uterus to remove the endometrial lining. The victim must appear negative on a pregnancy test before a menstrual extraction can be safely performed.

This alternative should be explained to the victim. If the medical facility does not customarily perform menstrual extractions, the victim should be informed of where this service can be obtained.

- 2) *Diethylstilbestrol (DES, the morning-after pill).* DES is a synthetic hormone that can be given up to 72 hours after intercourse to prevent pregnancy. However, because of the possibility of harmful short-term as well as long-term side effects, the use of DES should be restricted to emergency situations and then only after taking the following precautions:

- a) The victim is not currently using oral contraceptives or an intrauterine contraceptive device (IUD).

- b) The victim is not currently pregnant (this should be ruled out by examination and pregnancy test).
 - c) The victim has no history of cancer, diabetes, some forms of heart disease (see other contraindications on DES literature).
 - d) Administration is begun within 72 hours of the victim's unprotected exposure to pregnancy.
 - e) The facility can provide a six week follow-up examination or make an appropriate referral and is relatively *sure* the patient will return for follow-up.
 - f) The facility has the ability to terminate a pregnancy if DES is given and fails, or has the ability to make an appropriate referral.
 - g) The victim has been informed in detail, verbally and in writing, of all the side effects (short and long-term), contraindications and precautions of using this drug.
 - h) If DES is prescribed, the full course of the drug *must* be taken for effectiveness. Also, an anti-nausea medication may be considered.
- 3) *Insertion of an IUD.* An intrauterine device may be inserted and later removed during the victim's next menstrual period. Because there is a small risk of spreading venereal disease contracted from the assailant to the uterus by inserting an IUD, care should be taken to stress to the victim the importance of followup testing and treatment for venereal disease.
- 4) *Suction Abortion or D&C.* Abortion is an option to the victim who chooses to wait until pregnancy is determined. If the hospital or physician has a policy against providing abortions, the victim should be provided with information explaining the policy and stating where such services can be obtained.

E. *Follow-Up*

Follow-up treatment for both medical and counseling purposes is an important part of assisting sexual assault victims. However, some victims may be reluctant to participate in follow-up treatment because it may be a constant reminder of the traumatic experience they have undergone. A suggested procedure, therefore, is to coordinate the follow-up with the victim's initial treatment and, if possible and desired by the victim, to make such treatment part of a continuous medical effort. The victim may be more likely to participate in follow-up treatment which involves familiar faces. However, a number of follow-up choices should be available to the victim, including referrals to private physicians, free clinics, VD clinics, and support services.

1. *Medical Follow-Up.*

- a. The initial support person at the hospital should be responsible for making the follow-up appointment at the time of the initial examination. Whenever possible the victim should be contacted to insure that he/she does, in fact, follow-up either at the hospital, or at another referral facility or with a private physician.
- b. The victim should be given the name and phone number of the medical person to contact for any problem which would merit prompt attention, e.g. signs of infection such as fever, pain, sores, discharge, etc.
- c. The schedule for follow-up treatment should be discussed in detail with the victim. The following schedule includes some of the options:
 - 1) Gonorrhea test — three to five days after the initial examination
 - 2) Syphilis test — six to eight weeks after the initial examination

- 3) Pregnancy tests/prevention:
 - a) within 48-72 hours, if DES treatment is chosen
 - b) two weeks after missed period if no prior treatment is chosen
2. *Counseling Follow-Up.* Emotional support and/or counseling should be available to victims at every phase of their contact with the hospital. If crisis intervention is available at the hospital during the initial examination, a determination of the need for additional counseling can better be made both by the support person and the victim.

Facilities that do not have a counseling staff or support person available should refer victims needing such services to outside agencies properly staffed with counselors. Again, care should be taken to coordinate this follow-up counseling with the initial treatment.

Victims must have a choice of whether or not to obtain counseling. They should be given the name and phone number of agencies that offer services for sexual assault victims.

APPENDIX

CHAPTER TWO

APPENDIX TWO-A

AUTHORIZATION FOR RELEASE OF MEDICAL INFORMATION FOR VICTIMS OF SEXUAL ASSAULT

I,, hereby authorize
(Name of Hospital)

to release all of the evidence found and all of the information contained in the medical records concerning this sexual assault examination and treatment to the law enforcement agencies that may be involved in investigating this assault or in prosecuting the assailant.

I hereby waive all medical privilege in connection with such examination, treatment and evidence found, and I expressly authorize the use of such medical information in any subsequent criminal prosecution in the State or Federal courts against the assailant.

Care was received on or about

Emergency Department In-Patient.....

Under the name of

I UNDERSTAND THAT THIS WAIVER AND RELEASE AUTHORIZES RELEASING THE RECORDS OF THE SEXUAL ASSAULT EXAMINATION TO THE APPROPRIATE LAW ENFORCEMENT AGENCIES, BUT THAT NOTHING CONTAINED IN THIS WAIVER AND RELEASE OBLIGATES ME TO PROSECUTE THE ASSAILANT.

SIGNATURE OF WITNESS:

SIGNATURE OF AUTHORIZING PERSON(S):

.....

.....

DATE:

.....

TIME:

.....

Relationship to Patient

APPENDIX TWO-B

HENNEPIN COUNTY MEDICAL CENTER EMERGENCY DEPARTMENT NURSING SEXUAL ASSAULT REPORT

Pt. No.

Address

Phone No.

Birthdate

OB-GYN HISTORY

Parity:	Last Pap Smear: Month Day Year
L.M.P.: Month Day Year	Ave. Length Menstration: Days

Abnormalities of Menstruation:	
Last Intercourse: Month Day Year	
Current medications: (List) A. Contraceptives: B. Other:	Date: Date of Incident: a.m. Time of Incident: p.m.

Examining Physician:

Examination (Circle if taken):

HCMC LAB TESTS	CRIME LAB TESTS
1. Seminal Fluid on Body: Yes No	5. Fingernail Scraping: Yes No
A. Where:	6. Pubic hair combing: Yes No
B. Swab for sperm mobility & P-tase: Yes No	7. Saliva Sample: Yes No
C. Swab for sperm stain: Yes No	8. Blood Type: Yes No
2. VDRL: Yes No	9. Sperm Typing Test: Yes No
3. Pregnancy Test: Yes No	10. Blood Alcohol/Drugs: Yes No
4. GC if Indicated: Yes No	11. Urine for Drug I.D.: Yes No
12. Photographs taken: Yes No	A. How many?
B. What of?	

13. Blood Pressure: /	T.P.R.
14. Description of Physical Injuries (Subjective & Objective):	

15. Orifices Involved:	
16. Ejaculation: Yes / No	Where:
17. Contraceptive Devices Used by Assailant:	
18. Since Assault (Circle): Bathing, Clothing Change, Douching, Other.	
Describe:	

19. Stains on Clothing: Yes / No	Describe:
----------------------------------	-----------

20. Emotional State (Subjective & Objective):

21. Disposition (Rape Crisis Center, Home, Clinic Appointment, Etc.):

22. Other Relevant Comments:

NURSE

POLICE OFFICER Receiving Crime Lab Specimens

APPENDIX TWO-C

PROTECTION OF CHAIN OF CUSTODY OF EVIDENCE—Sample Form

Patient Name _____

Date _____ Floor _____

The following specimens numbered and labeled in the attached container were obtained from the above patient.

1. One swab in a test tube for acid phosphatase (add 1. ml. saline please).
2. One swab in a test tube for routine culture.
3. Two slides in a brown envelope for smears for examination for sperm cells.
4. Thayer-Martin culture plate for gonococcus culture inoculated.

Included in this box is an extra empty test tube if it is needed; and a brown envelope for hair, stains, etc., which the physician may want.

Label each specimen with complete name and hospital number.

Staple this card to the container before it leaves the E.R.

All persons handling the specimens must sign in order:

Doctor:	_____	Time _____	Date _____	am:pm
Nurse:	_____	Time _____	Date _____	am:pm
Tech:	_____	Time _____	Date _____	am:pm
Chemistry:	_____	Time _____	Date _____	am:pm
Microbiology:	_____	Time _____	Date _____	am:pm
Other	_____	Time _____	Date _____	am:pm

APPENDIX TWO-D

Bureau of Criminal Apprehension (BCA) Laboratory Capability

I. INTRODUCTION

The major types of evidence found in crimes of sexual assault are blood, semen, hairs and fibers. The following discussion will explain the necessity of control samples and what results can reasonably be expected from the various evidence types.

II. INFORMATION DETERMINABLE BY BLOOD TESTS:

- A. Determine whether blood is human or animal origin.
- B. Classification of dried blood stains into one of four major groups of "O", "A", "B", and "AB". Additionally, blood may be subgrouped in several other factors such as Rh, PGM, EAP, and other blood group systems, depending on size and sample condition.
- C. Classification of blood from each person involved to determine the possible source of the dried stains. NOTE: It is of little value to show that blood on a suspect could have come from the victim without also showing that this blood *could not have come* from the suspect himself or one of his associates.
- D. Identification of human blood as coming from a particular person is *not* possible. Also the age of a dried stain is not possible to determine.

III. INFORMATION DETERMINABLE FROM OTHER SIGNIFICANT BODY FLUIDS:

A. Seminal Stains:

- 1. Their identification on the victim's clothing, in vaginal swabs, or at the scene can be of value in corroborating statements of a victim.
- 2. If the suspect is a *secretor* the blood group can be determined from the seminal fluid. Additionally the PGM enzyme is present in seminal fluid which can also be determined and compared to that of a suspect.
- 3. Blood controls are necessary to determine the PGM enzyme present in the suspect and victim. Saliva controls are necessary to determine each involved person's secretor status.

B. Differentiation of secretors and nonsecretors.

- 1. Accomplished by using saliva controls from all involved persons.
- 2. Secretor — One of about 80% of the population who has in his/her other body fluids (saliva, semen, perspiration, etc.), the same ABO blood group factors which are present in his blood.

3. Nonsecretor — One of about 20% of the population who does not have ABO blood group factors in other body fluids.

C. Saliva Stains:

If present on cigarette butts or clothing it may be of value for determining the blood group of the person who deposited it if this person was a secretor.

D. Limitations on seminal and saliva stain grouping:

1. Semen is often mixed with urine or vaginal secretions of the victim making grouping tests inconclusive.
2. The amount of blood group factor present on a cigarette butt or in a seminal stain may be insufficient to give conclusive grouping tests.

IV. INFORMATION DETERMINABLE FROM HAIRS AND FIBERS:

- A. While hair and fiber examinations are circumstantial from an evidentiary standpoint, they can corroborate other evidence or testimony.

B. Hairs

1. Hairs can be identified as animal or human in origin.
2. If human it can be sometimes determined if the hair was damaged, if the hair was torn in its removal, and the possible area of the body which the hair originated, such as head vs. pubic. Age and sex cannot be determined from a hair.

C. Results of hair comparisons:

1. Hairs match in microscopic characteristics and could have originated either from the same individual or from another individual whose hair exhibits the same microscopic characteristics.
2. Hairs are dissimilar and did not originate from the same individual.
3. No conclusion could be reached.

- D. Control hair samples should consist of at least 12 full length hairs *pulled* from different locations on the head or pubic area.

E. Fiber examinations:

1. Identification as to type of fiber such as animal, vegetable, synthetic, or mineral.
2. Determinations as to type, color, size, weave, and overall microscopic appearance are made between questioned fibers and knowns. A positive match indicates a possible common origin.
3. Submit entire garment for control samples.

V. INFORMATION CONCERNING CONTROL SAMPLES:

Most laboratory examinations are comparative in nature and a meaningful interpretation of results is often not possible without control samples. Consequently, as a general laboratory policy, blood grouping, secretor grouping, and other comparative examinations will be performed only after the appropriate controls from all persons involved have been received.

CHAPTER THREE

COUNSELING THE VICTIM OF SEXUAL ASSAULT

CHAPTER THREE

COUNSELING THE VICTIM OF SEXUAL ASSAULT

I. Introduction	57
II. The Crisis of Sexual Assault	57
A. Basic Assumptions	57
B. Implications for Counseling	57
C. Counselor Responsibility	58
III. The Victim	58
A. Patterns of Response to Sexual Assault	58
B. Victims' Feelings	59
C. Needs of the Victim	60
1. Crisis Intervention	61
2. Assistance with Life-Sustaining Needs: Housing, Transportation, Child Care	61
3. Medical Information and Care	61
4. Legal Procedural Information	61
5. Advocacy	61
6. Individual Counseling	62
7. Group Counseling - Support Group	62
8. Family Counseling	62
9. Referral	63
IV. The Counselor/Support Person	63
A. Who Counsels/Provides Support	63
B. Needs of the Counselor/Support Person	63
C. Role of the Counselor/Support Person	64
1. The Counseling/Support Process - Responding to the Emotional Needs of the Victim	64
2. Assisting in Decision-Making	65
3. Institutional Advocate	67

4. Assessing Adjustment and the Need for Referral	68
5. Follow-Up	68

Appendix

A. Myths and Facts About Sexual Assault	71
B. A Note to Those Closest to Rape Victims: How You Can Help	75

COUNSELING THE VICTIM OF SEXUAL ASSAULT

I. INTRODUCTION

The following guidelines are intended for use by social service and mental health professionals, paraprofessionals, volunteer advocates, crisis intervention workers, telephone counselors and any other persons involved in a supportive role with sexual assault victims. The guidelines are intended to be adapted to a particular community, taking into consideration the needs of that community as well as the level of services available.

Since the needs of sexual assault victims cannot be met effectively without the combined efforts of law enforcement, medical, social service and prosecutorial personnel, it is necessary to be aware of the responsibilities of one another in dealing with sexual assault victims. Therefore, it is recommended that social service personnel be familiar with the guidelines presented elsewhere in this manual for police, hospitals and prosecutors.

This Chapter, **Counseling the Victim of Sexual Assault**, does not attempt to teach basic counseling techniques or crisis intervention skills. It is assumed that any person involved in the counseling of sexual assault victims is already trained or will receive training in general counseling skills. What is presented in this chapter is intended to supplement those skills by providing guidelines specific and unique to meeting the particular needs of sexual assault victims.

II. THE CRISIS OF SEXUAL ASSAULT

Sexual assault is an invasion of a person's physical and psychological being. It includes rape, same-sex assault, incest, child molestation, and any other sexual activity which a person is forced into without his/her consent.

A. *Basic Assumptions*

1. No person has the right to sexually violate another person.
2. Sexual assault is a potentially painful and intense experience in which the victim has to deal not only with actual physical sexual assault but also the emotional aftermath which may occur. Sexual assault is an experience that may severely affect the victim's unique pattern of physical, emotional, sexual and social functioning.
3. Sexual assault is an act of power and violence expressed through sexual aggression. In sexual assault, the victim's control over his/her body and life is involuntarily in the hands of another person, through fear or coercion.
4. Sexual assault is surrounded by myths that may affect the response of the victim, and his/her family, friends and acquaintances.

B. *Implications for Counseling*

1. The victim of sexual assault should be viewed as a victim of crisis. The counseling process should focus on the victim's reactions and feelings to the sexual assault and not on other problems except as they relate to the sexual assault.
2. It is crucial for the victim to regain a sense of control over his/her own life. In the

counseling process the victim has the right to be presented with all the options, but the decisions and choices should be completely his/her own.

3. The counselor's primary responsibility is to the victim — to be there to listen and to empathize with the victim's feelings; to inform, to explain, to clarify, to support, to aid with practical issues and concerns, and to assist the victim in dealing with people such as family, police, medical and legal personnel.
4. The counselor's role is to support the victim — not to investigate or judge the victim.

C. Counselor Responsibility

In order to function effectively in the victim's best interest, the counselor should:

1. Be fully informed in regard to the medical, law enforcement and legal procedures in order to provide information, explanation, and clarification of these procedures to the victim; be aware of resources such as support services, sources of financial aid, etc., in order to make effective referrals.
2. Be fully informed about the myths and facts of sexual assault and how they will affect the victim, friends, relatives and significant others (See Appendix A, "Myths and Facts").
3. Be knowledgeable concerning the variety of reactions of victims to the sexual assault during, immediately following, and subsequent to the experience.

III. THE VICTIM

A. Patterns of Response to Sexual Assault*

It is important to remember that each victim will respond to the sexual assault in a unique manner reflecting 1) the uniqueness of the incident (e.g. degree of force used, relationship, if any, with the assailant); 2) the victim's developmental stage, particularly in the areas of sexuality, interpersonal relationships and support systems; and 3) the victim's previously developed manner of responding to a crisis. Studies indicate, however, that, as in any crisis situation, the responses of the sexual assault victim will follow a somewhat predictable and sequential pattern: *Phase 1: Impact, Phase 2: Outward Adjustment, Phase 3: Resolution, Phase 4: Integration*. It is essential to be aware of the *fluidity* of these phases for each victim, e.g. being in a later phase but going back to behavior typical of an earlier phase or experiencing aspects of one phase while being in another. These phases should be viewed merely as a frame of reference from which to consider the variety of victims' emotional responses to sexual assault.

Phase 1: Impact. This is a stage of disorganization and disorientation immediately following the sexual assault. It may last a few hours or a few days. The victim's initial reaction is an immediate impact reaction in which there may be a variety of emotions including shock and disbelief, followed by anxiety and fear. How the victim expresses these emotions will vary. The victim may be crying or laughing, quiet or talking. He/she may experience a loss of appetite and sleep, or other physical trauma. It is during this phase that the victim will need to deal with decisions about medical attention, reporting to the police, notifying family and friends, and other immediate practical concerns, such as repair of locks, transportation, child care, etc.

*Adapted from Sandra Sutherland and Donald J. Scherl, M.D., "Patterns of Response Among Victims of Rape", *American Journal of Orthopsychiatry*, 40 (April 1970): 3: 503-511.

Phase 2: Outward Adjustment. As the victim deals with practical concerns he/she will often deny, suppress or rationalize the sexual assault in an attempt to return some normalcy to his/her life. This period may last for a few days, a few weeks or years. During this period the victim does not want to talk about the sexual assault or have to deal with it in anyway. The victim wants to return to his/her pre-sexual assault equilibrium which represents security, comfort and a feeling of being in control. He/she attempts to do so by denying that the assault happened. Although during this period the victim outwardly appears to have adjusted, he/she has not in fact resolved the sexual assault experience.

Phase 3: Resolution. The resolution phase usually begins when the victim is depressed and feels a need to talk to someone about the sexual assault. It may be precipitated by a specific incident, e.g. having to appear in court or seeing someone who resembles the assailant, or the victim may just find himself/herself constantly thinking about the assault and wondering why. The victim realizes the need to finally deal with the sexual assault both in terms of feelings about himself/herself as well as feelings about the assailant. Resolution occurs when the victim is able to experience anger and focus that anger where it belongs — on the assailant.

Phase 4: Integration. The period of integration is the culmination of all the previous phases. At this point the victim has accepted the fact of the sexual assault, has sorted out his/her feelings of guilt and responsibility — focusing anger on the assailant, and has integrated the sexual assault experience into the whole of his/her life, neither repressing nor being dominated by it.

B. *Victim's Feelings*

During the period following the sexual assault the victim may experience a variety of emotions. These feelings need not be viewed as stage specific; they can occur during any of the phases described above. Victims will vary in their manner of expressing, experiencing, and understanding the emotional impact of the assault situation. Emotional responses may be readily discernible through verbalizations or physical manifestations such as crying, shaking, restlessness, or they may be masked — the victim may appear calm, controlled and subdued. The appearance of the victim may be dependent upon several factors: exhaustion, the assault situation, state of shock, utilization of defenses in an attempt to deny or repress the attack. However the victim's feelings are expressed will be based upon the victim's previous pattern for coping with stressful situations.

The following presentation of the feelings frequently experienced by sexual assault victims* is based on the assumption that there is a continuum of feelings within each of the groupings.

1. *Fear - Anxiety Reactions.* Although the specifics of each sexual assault situation are different, many victims respond initially with a feeling of relief, "Thank God I'm alive — I could have been killed." This realization most often creates a feeling of fear of being attacked again. This fear response may be a specific fear of the assailant, especially if the assailant threatened to harm the victim again, or it may be a generalized fear: fear of people or things that remind the victim of the assault situation.

Many victims will experience feelings of anxiety based on their fear of being attacked again. This anxiety may be evidenced by shaking, startled reflexes, disturbed sleeping patterns, nightmares, etc.

*Adapted, with permission, from the Minnesota NOW State Task Force on Rape handbook, *On Rape*.

This anxiety may extend to a fear of people in general. The victim may be particularly attuned to sexual innuendos, glances, etc., which used to be taken in stride. If the assailant was someone trusted by the victim, he/she may experience a feeling of loss of faith and trust not only in others but also in his/her own judgment.

Many victims may have believed, prior to the sexual assault, that sexual assault couldn't happen to them, that they would be able to resist or somehow take care of themselves. Since any resistance was overcome either by force or fear, most victims may feel a loss of control. They may experience feelings of powerlessness and helplessness which in turn affects the way they view their own independence. If the victim has followed a life style of trusting people, leaving doors open, talking to strangers, hitchhiking across country, and so on, the sexual assault may be felt as an intrusion not only of the body but of his/her whole way of life.

2. *Guilt — Self-Blame — Embarrassment.*

NOTE: Many victims have internalized the myth that the victim of sexual assault is somehow responsible or to blame for having been sexually assaulted. Regardless of the fact that a person may have acted carelessly or without good judgment (e.g. leaving a door unlocked at night), sexual assault is a crime committed *against* the victim, for which the assailant is responsible.

In general, feelings of guilt and self-blame seem to vary in degree with the circumstances of the sexual assault, the extent of physical injury to the victim and the type of association with the assailant. Victims who have experienced severe physical injury during the sexual assault usually have less guilt feelings because of the obvious evidence of their resistance. The victim who was sexually assaulted at home, however, may feel guilty about not having secured the house better. The victim who knows the assailant may have the most difficulty in resolving guilt feelings and conflicts over the sexual assault. This victim may, irrationally, blame himself/herself for poor judgment, seductive behavior, etc. The victim who does not physically resist due to fear may irrationally blame himself/herself for not preventing the assault — even if physical resistance would have been useless.

Many victims may feel ashamed and embarrassed about the sexual assault due to society's uncomfortableness with sexuality in general. Our bodies and sexual activity have always been regarded as private, and privacy has been stripped from the victim by someone else. Telling anyone at all may be painful and embarrassing. If the assailant was verbally abusive the victim may be embarrassed to repeat what was said. In addition, the victim may not know acceptable terminology to describe what happened sexually. The victim may also feel embarrassed during the medical exam when his/her body is again exposed and is the object of attention and inspection by strangers.

3. *Anger.* Anger is perhaps the most appropriate feeling the victim of sexual assault can experience. Anger, directed toward the assailant, can be the beginning of a healthy resolution of the sexual assault experience. Many victims may have difficulty expressing this anger verbally although ventilation of the anger may also take the form of reporting and prosecuting.

C. *Needs of the Victim*

The most immediate need of every victim of sexual assault is the need for safety. This should be the primary concern of the first person to be in contact with the victim following the sexual assault.

Beyond the need for immediate safety, each victim of sexual assault will have different needs, ranging from the need to have access merely to factual information and practical resources to the need for support from someone who can help deal with the victim's intense feelings about the sexual assault. The range of services available to sexual assault victims, whether provided by police, hospital, legal, social service, or crisis center personnel, should reflect the range in victims' needs:

1. *Crisis Intervention.* Frequently the support systems, e.g. family and friends, normally available to a person during a crisis, will be unable to help the victim cope with the crisis of sexual assault. For this reason, many victims, and also their significant others, need to have outside support available in order to be able to work through the immediate crisis situation. Immediacy of this service is crucial and wherever possible should be available to the victim on a 24-hour basis. Crisis intervention may involve providing information to the victim over the phone, providing support at the scene, through the police investigation and hospital examination, providing short-term counseling, and/or making appropriate referrals.
2. *Assistance with Life-Sustaining Needs: Housing, Transportation, Child Care.* Victims who have been assaulted are frequently afraid to be alone in their homes or to travel by themselves. Many times assailants will threaten to return if the victim goes to the police. Victims may need:
 - Transportation to or from the hospital, police station, or home.
 - Housing for the immediate night or day, and possibly the next few days.
 - Child care, e.g. while the victim is at the hospital or with the police.
 - Contact with family or friends who would be comforting and helpful. There may be various reasons that a victim may not want to be with his/her family. A quick assessment of these reasons should be made and the victim should be helped in making the decision. Fears of how parents or significant others will react may be overestimated, or they may be real, but they need to be dealt with.
 - Assistance in securing the home or helping the victim feel safer at home, e.g. changing locks, contacting Operation ID, finding a roommate, etc.
3. *Medical Information and Care.* The victim of sexual assault has the right to a sensitive and thorough medical examination. The victim should be encouraged to seek medical attention for treatment of injuries, venereal disease, and pregnancy as well as for gathering of evidence if there is any possibility that the victim will want to prosecute. Full medical information, with all the options and alternatives, should be provided to allow the victim to make his/her decisions from a position of knowledge rather than ignorance.
4. *Legal Procedural Information.* Decisions regarding whether or not to report and whether or not to prosecute are very personal ones and should be made by each victim on the basis of as much information as possible. The victim needs to know what to expect at each step of the legal process *before* making a decision.
5. *Advocacy.* If the victim chooses to receive medical attention, to report to the police, and/or to prosecute, he/she may still feel intimidated and/or confused by the system and may want someone to accompany him/her through the system representing his/her interest. The advocacy may come from within or outside the system and does not necessarily imply an adversity of interest between the system and the victim. Rather, advocacy may merely be a matter of assuring that there is someone the victim can turn to at any point during the medical-legal process for information, explanations, or support.

6. *Individual Counseling.* Sexual assault, or its attempt, is viewed as a crisis. It is an act of violence. The crisis is situational, an unexpected event which is disruptive. The threat to life is a primary reaction. Along with this comes the feeling of helplessness. The loss of control of oneself and the humiliation are feelings that are not easily overcome.

Short-term counseling might provide a catharsis for the victim, helping that person deal with the trauma and the feelings connected with the sexual assault. The victim may need short-term support in regaining a sense of control over his/her life. This short-term support aimed at helping the victim learn to cope, may be the catalyst for working through continuous emotional reactions and may ultimately prevent the need for more intensive therapy.

For some victims, however, the traumatic reaction to a sexual assault may be such a psychological shock that intensive, long-term counseling may be needed. The emotional responses of the victim may interfere drastically with the day-to-day functioning of that individual. The victim who feels guilty about the incident may be triggering an emotional response that is difficult for that person to overcome. The guilt in not having prevented or stopped the action in a sexual assault may affect the person's ability to relate to other people, feeling they see him/her as responsible and shameful. The victim who feels anger may find his/her sexual attitudes and sexual activity in a difficult and/or negative place. These types of reactions and others may stimulate the victim to seek professional long-term help in working through negative or uncomfortable attitudes that affect functioning.

7. *Group Counseling - Support Group.* In addition to dealing with his/her own feelings about the sexual assault, the victim may be concerned about other people's attitudes and reactions toward him/her. The internal conflicts that the victim may be experiencing may also interfere with that person's ability to relate to other people. The concern with what others think about him/her and how it will affect how others react to him/her may immobilize or hamper the individual in relating to others.

A support group, as experienced in group counseling, is a milieu where the victim can share personal fears and perhaps find that others share those fears. A group provides an atmosphere of acceptance of members that will aid an individual in relating feelings and fears about how others relate to him/her.

A group involvement may provide the opportunity for the victim to realize that other persons experience similar emotions and responses. The ability to share these feelings may stimulate a working-through of the emotional difficulties resulting from the sexual assault.

8. *Family Counseling.* The victimization in a sexual assault may affect more than the individual immediately involved. The victims of such a crime may include an entire family.

Family members also enter this experience with preconceived notions and attitudes about sexual assault victims and about the family member assaulted. The combination of these attitudes and feelings creates the potentially fertile ground for family difficulty.

Family counseling may become necessary when the trauma affects normal family functioning. The family may find it necessary to meet as a unit to work through the attitudes and feelings that interfere with positive family interaction.

The sexual assault victim will need familial support to effectively deal with the personal trauma. The lack of family understanding will affect the ability to cope with the experience.

9. *Referral.* An individual in a crisis situation may feel the need to reach out for help. The manner in which that individual is treated in the first, and perhaps only, call or contact will possibly determine whether that person will continue to seek the help that may be desperately needed.

A well defined and coordinated referral network will help insure that the victim is not given vague answers or indefinite information, or gets lost in the system. The initial contact, whether it is the police, the hospital, or an information and referral service, should understand the available service network for a sexual assault victim. Service to a victim should be a part of an organized system that includes: social services, advocate services, police referral, medical referral, and legal referral. Such a system should address the emotional needs, the legal needs, and the medical needs of the victim. Referring a victim to the appropriate person in that system should be consistent with the victim's feelings, needs, and wants.

IV. THE COUNSELOR/SUPPORT PERSON

A. *Who Counsels/Provides Support*

This will vary from community to community and will be dependent on the size of the community, the types of services already available, the concern of the community, etc. Counseling/support of sexual assault victims could be provided by trained volunteers, paraprofessionals, or professionals. Possibilities include "Crisis Line" volunteers, social service workers, public health or school nurses, professional counselors, public or private mental health facilities, family planning clinics, or sexual assault crisis center personnel. The role of the counselor would vary accordingly. What is of primary significance is not who provides the services but rather that sexual assault counseling services *do* exist and that the community's law enforcement, medical, and legal personnel who work with sexual assault victims as well as the community at large *know* who, how, and when to contact a counselor/support person and know what they can expect from that person.

B. *Needs of the Counselor/Support Person*

It is unrealistic to expect that every counselor/support person can meet the needs of every sexual assault victim. The counselor/support person needs to stay in touch with his/her own emotional reaction to the victim. If the counselor has strong negative feelings about a particular victim or feels he/she cannot handle the case alone or at all, the victim should be referred to someone else. This should be seen as a recognition of a person's limits rather than a sign of weakness. It is quite possible that the counselor/support person's own value system or job situation may prevent him/her from meeting certain needs of the victim, e.g. a request for an abortion referral. In this case again the counselor should refer the victim to another support person who can make such a referral without fear of job loss or interfering with one's own value system.

The counselor/support persons in each community need to work as a team of people who communicate with each other and support each other. Providing support to victims of sexual assault can be an emotionally and physically exhausting experience. Counseling/support persons need to learn their personal limitations and know they can turn to someone, in confidence, for support.

Training. The counselor/support persons should receive training which will prepare them to deal with the emotional, medical, legal and political aspects of sexual assault

that will be relevant to the victims they will counsel. Such training should be geared to meet the needs of each counselor/support person by *supplementing* skills, training, education and/or experience already gained with aspects specific to meeting the needs of sexual assault victims.

C. *Role of the Counselor/Support Person*

Remember that the sexual assault victim has two equally important needs: access to someone who can help him/her deal with the feelings about the experience and access to factual information/practical resources in order to facilitate decision-making. The counselor/support person can help with both of these.

The ideal support system or person for a victim of sexual assault is one which:

- Allows the victim to be himself/herself in feelings and in needs.
- Allows the victim to heal at his/her own pace.
- Anticipates reactions to the crisis without forcing the process.
- Realizes that people can heal and emerge stronger from a crisis.

It is important for the counselor/support person to be aware of and to communicate what he/she can and cannot provide for the victim. This will avoid raising unrealistic expectations in the victim and will help the counselor avoid frustration and feelings of failure when the victim's preexisting life problems persist. Such problems may be brought into focus more sharply during such a time of trauma, and conflicts between the victim and other people important to him/her may surface.

1. *The Counseling/Support Process - Responding to the Emotional Needs of the Victim.* A major role of the counselor/support person is to respond to the emotional needs of the victim. The following guidelines provide suggested ways of being with and responding to the victim. These guidelines are not meant to be used as techniques but rather as ideas to stimulate thinking and to be incorporated and modified into the counselor/support person's own style of counseling. The list is not all-inclusive nor does the order of presentation reflect any sequential order in the counseling support process.

- a. *Confidentiality.* It is important throughout the counseling/support process to assure the victim of confidentiality. Remember that many victims are ashamed and embarrassed that they have been sexually assaulted, and they need to know that you will not discuss this situation with anyone without permission, e.g. to make a medical referral. This is particularly important if a third party contacts you about the victim. That party, as well as the victim, should know that confidentiality between you and the victim will be respected.
- b. The important aspect of the counseling/support process is not what you do or say, but how you are. Simply being there for the sexual assault victim may be enough. The most beneficial counseling responses are genuine feelings of warmth, concern, caring, empathy, and desire to function supportively and effectively. These feelings are transmitted to the victim.
- c. *Listening.* Listen in a way that supports and validates the victim's feelings, encouraging him/her to express whatever feelings he/she has in whatever way he/she wants to.
 - Do not attempt to redefine the situation as being more or less critical than the victim sees it. Keep in mind that each victim's reaction to the sexual assault will be based partially on his/her perception of the event in its social

context plus his/her previous experience in coping with stressful events. Also keep in mind that the victim's attitudes toward men, women, violence, and sexuality as well as his/her own feelings of self-worth will affect his/her reaction. The victim is the only one who can determine how critical the situation is, since the determination must be based on his/her values and perceptions.

- Go with the victim's style of expressing his/her emotions. This may range from *expressed* — crying, shaking, verbalizing, expressing anger, etc. to *controlled* — shocked (dazed, confused), intellectualizing as if it happened to someone else, or simply a silent reaction.
 - Help the victim to clarify his/her feelings. Communicate an acceptance and understanding that his/her reaction is a normal reaction to what has happened.
- d. It may help the victim to be told that this experience may cause a disruption to his/her life for a while.
- e. Assure the victim that he/she has not been singled out for an attack, but that what has happened to him/her has happened to thousands of others.
- f. Allow the victim to talk through as much of the sexual assault as he/she wants to. Finding out that he/she can share this experience with someone who is not shocked by hearing it can be very reassuring to the victim.
- g. Anticipate reactions or feelings to the victim, without forcing them, e.g. "Some victims find they can't sleep at night". Knowing what to expect may help the victim deal with his/her reactions better. Physical problems, loss of sexual interest or changes in response, changes in patterns of living, fears which begin to restrict activity, loss of self-confidence — all these may occur long after the victim feels he/she has dealt with the sexual assault.
- h. Help the victim work through to a healthy anger; that is, anger directed toward the assailant, rather than towards himself/herself.
2. *Assisting in Decision-Making.* The victim of sexual assault has just been through a damaging experience in which he/she was forced to submit against his/her will. In order to regain a sense of control over his/her own life, the victim needs to be informed of his/her options and then to be supported in whatever decisions he/she makes. The counselor/support person's role is to help the victim clarify his/her concerns, provide the information necessary in order for the victim to come to a decision, and focus the victim's decision on action that needs to be taken in priority order. Decisions may need to be made about: medical treatment, reporting to the police, safety precautions, emergency clothing, transportation, child care and housing arrangements, and informing relatives or employers. The counselor/support person's awareness of services and alternatives can be extremely important.
- a. *Seeking Medical Treatment.* In an emergency medical situation, this is a necessity and the victim should be transported by an ambulance or the police.
- The victim should be made aware of the fact that a prompt medical evidentiary examination is necessary in most cases to even consider a possible prosecution. If the victim is unsure about whether to report to the police and/or become involved in prosecuting, he/she should be encouraged to obtain an evidentiary examination should he/she decide later to report and prosecute.

- ◉ If the victim chooses not to report to the police, he/she should be encouraged to seek medical attention for venereal disease, pregnancy and possible injuries. It is hoped that most hospitals no longer automatically report a sexual assault case to the police but in areas where this is the hospital's policy the victim should be made aware of this and be presented with other medical alternatives if he/she so desires.
- ◉ If the victim does decide to seek medical attention, he/she should be told not to *bathe, shower, douche, or change clothes* before going to the hospital and/or the police since this could destroy possible evidence.
- ◉ The counselor/support person should inform the victim of what is involved in the medical examination and the purpose of each aspect.
- ◉ The victim should be made aware of the questions that will most likely be asked and the purpose of these questions, e.g. regarding last intercourse, contraceptive usage, venereal disease history.
- ◉ The victim should be informed of the importance of the venereal disease and pregnancy examination and treatment, and the alternatives available.
- ◉ The victim should be made aware of the fact that the Minnesota Criminal Sexual Conduct Law provides that medical costs arising from examining the victim for purposes of gathering evidence be paid by the county in which the offense was committed. However, some counties require the sexual assault be reported to the police in order for the victim to be reimbursed, and the victim should be informed if this is the case.

(Please read Chapter Two, **The Medical Examination and Treatment of Sexual Assault Victims**, to become more familiar with the medical procedures.)

b. Reporting to the Police.

- ◉ Reporting to the police can be a means for the victim to regain a sense of control over his/her life as well as to ventilate some very healthy anger. Whenever possible the victim should be encouraged to report to the police, even anonymously (if a third-party reporting system is available), since many assailants assault more than once.
- ◉ If the victim expresses hesitation to report, the counselor/support person should help the victim sort out his/her feelings about reporting. If the victim's concern is based on a fear of the system and how he/she will be treated, the counselor/support person may help allay that fear by giving the victim the name(s) of sensitive, concerned law enforcement person(s).
- ◉ If the victim decides to report, he/she should be made aware that the police will need to question him/her and to conduct an investigation and gather physical evidence from both the victim and the scene, if available. the procedures of police investigation should be explained to the victim.
- ◉ Police questioning should only concern matters relating to the incident; however, police may need to ask embarrassing questions of the victim and the purpose of these questions should be discussed with the victim.
- ◉ Many police refer victims to an advocate/support person and work closely with such counseling services.

(Please read Chapter One, **Law Enforcement Investigation of Sexual Assault Crimes**, to become more familiar with the police procedures.)

c. Becoming Involved in Prosecution.

- ◉ Remember, reporting the sexual assault to the police does not mean the victim will have to prosecute. That decision can be made later by the victim.

- The counselor/support person should be familiar with the Minnesota Criminal Sexual Conduct Law. Briefly, the law:
 - Classifies criminal sexual conduct into four degrees depending on the degree of force and nature and extent of injury to the victim.
 - Stipulates that the victim's testimony need not be corroborated, although corroboration may improve the chances of gaining a conviction.
 - Provides that the victim need not prove resistance.
 - Provides that, with a few exceptions, evidence of the victim's prior sexual behavior is not admissible in court.
 - Provides that medical costs arising from examining the victim for purposes of gathering evidence be paid by the county in which the offense was committed.
- Sexual assault is a crime against the State and is therefore prosecuted by a county attorney, representing the State. The victim is the prosecution's key witness.
- The victim needs to be aware of what will be expected of him/her throughout the legal process.
- The victim needs to be supported throughout the entire process whether or not the case is prosecuted or a conviction is obtained.

(Please read Chapter Four, **The Prosecution of Sexual Assault Crimes**, to become familiar with the legal procedures.)

d. *Telling Family and Friends.*

- The counselor/support person should help the victim assess which people in his/her life may provide support and understanding. The victim, however, should make the decision about who he/she wants to share with.
- The counselor/support person may offer to help the victim tell family/friends if he/she wants this. Sometimes a third party can be a buffer.
- Family/friends may need an initial period of ventilation. This crisis has disrupted their lives also and brought forth feelings of worry, fear, and a recognition of their inability to protect the victim from harm. Sometimes the hurt and anger experienced by the family may supercede their concern for the victim and result in a blaming attitude. The crisis may bring underlying problems in relationships to the surface. The victim may need the counselor/support person for listening-ventilation and assistance in coping with these reactions.
- The counselor/support person might consider, with the victim's permission, counseling for family members also, especially if:
 - The family becomes overprotective of the victim and does not allow him/her to resume daily activities.
 - The victim and his/her partner are unable to resume, after what they consider to be a reasonable time, their usual pattern of sexual activity and level of trust in each other.
 - There are feelings that the victim is "ruined for life" or has disgraced the family.

Please read Appendix B, "A Note to Those Closest to Rape Victims".)

3. *Institutional Advocate.* This may be the first acquaintance with the law enforcement and criminal justice system for many victims, and the nature and timing of the medical examination is of particular stress. What is viewed by the working professionals as regular and simple procedures, such as signing a "consent to examine" form or keeping of the victim's clothes for evidence, may provoke feelings

of overwhelming helplessness and anxiety in the victim. Hospital and police personnel may, at times, be too busy to give information in a reassuring slow manner. A clarification of what is happening and why it is necessary will help the victim regain a sense of control over what happens to him/her.

4. *Assessing Adjustment and the Need for Referral.* Not all sexual assault victims need or want counseling, and the vast majority do not need professional psychiatric counseling. Sexual assault can act as a catalyst, as can other life crises, in provoking the victim to reassess his/her lifestyle and experiences in interpersonal relationships. This introspection can be a maturing experience. However, an inability to resume normal tasks, failure to cope with the reactions of the victim's social network, or lack of resolution of introspection may necessitate referral for long-term counseling or psychotherapy.
5. *Follow-Up.* It is important that the victim knows that he/she can contact the counselor/support person later for support or information. The counselor/support person should take the initiative to call the victim, but only if the victim has agreed that he/she wants this. The purpose of the follow-up is to reassess the victim's needs, provide support, remind the victim of medical follow-up for venereal disease or pregnancy and, in general, to reassure the victim of the counselor/support person's availability.

APPENDIX

CHAPTER THREE

APPENDIX THREE-A

Myths and Facts About Sexual Assault*

Myth 1: Rape is an impulsive, uncontrollable act of sexual gratification or lust.

Fact: Practically every word of this myth can be controverted by facts. *Impulsive, uncontrollable*: Between 60% and 70% of all rapes are planned in advance. Another 10% are partially planned. Also, one important emotional payoff for the rapist is to be *in control*, not out of control. *Sexual gratification, lust*: Many rapists have readily available sexual outlets, and over half are married at the time of the attack. The primary motive displayed by most convicted rapists is aggression, dominance, and anger, NOT sex. Sex is used as a weapon to inflict violence, humiliation, and conquest on a victim.

Myth 2: "Good" girls don't get sexually assaulted.

Fact: Rapists and other sex offenders attack women of all races, all ages, all social background, all moral persuasions. Yet, many women as well as men believe this myth. It may serve a defensive function for them. They may feel safer if they believe that something the victim did, or some way the victim lived, provoked the attack. Therefore, as long as they continue to live and act circumspectly, nothing bad will happen to them.

Myth 3: Women frequently "cry rape" . . . there is a high rate of false reporting.

Fact: Studies and FBI statistics show that the false report rate for rape is about the same as that for other serious felonies, about 2 - 4%.

Myth 4: Women enjoy being overpowered and raped. They should "relax and enjoy it."

Fact: This myth fails to differentiate between rape and consensual intercourse. Frequently, people may say to a victim, "Well, if you weren't a virgin, what difference does it make?" For the victim, however, rape is not sex. It is violence, humiliation, degradation, and, ultimately, a situation in which she fears for her very life.

One of the sources of this myth is that some women have rape fantasies. The reasoning goes, if rape is a mental turn-on, why not the real thing? However, these women's fantasies are never bloody, never brutal, never humiliating, never fearful. They usually involve abandoning oneself to passion with someone they were attracted to anyway.

Myth 5: Any woman could prevent a rape if she really wanted to. No woman can be raped against her will.

Fact: The first concern of a rape victim is to survive the attack. No one but the victim can know what she is capable of doing, what the danger is and what methods might succeed. A victim should not be criticized for doing what she

*Adapted from material prepared by Eileen Keller, and from a paper developed by the National Organization for Women State Task Force on Rape, Minneapolis.

feels she must in order to save her life or avoid serious bodily injury. Insisting that women struggle to the death rather than submit to rape is really telling them that *their lives are less valuable than their sexual integrity*.

Myth 6: Rapists are so sick or perverted that they can be readily identified by their physical appearance, actions, or words. Conversely, anyone who looks "normal" or respectable couldn't be a rapist.

Fact: Studies show that many rapists do not differ significantly from the average man physically or on psychological profiles, except for being more likely to express rage and aggression. The vast majority of rapists do not look or act demented.

Rapists use many ways to develop trust in their victims and this myth helps lull victims into believing they are safe. As one article stated, "We hold rape to be such an ugly, vile crime that we expect such a person who would commit it to be marked." When the rapist looks and sounds normal, we tend to blame the victim, or deny that the rape even occurred.

Myth 7: Women precipitate rape by acting or dressing provocatively; they "ask for it."

Fact: No woman's dress or behavior gives someone the right to sexually assault her. According to the Federal Commission on Crimes of Violence, only four percent of reported sexual assaults involved any precipitative behavior on the part of the victim, and most of this consisted of nothing more than dressing or walking in a way that is socially defined as attractive.

Even in situations where a woman is flirtatious or clearly interested in sex, she is not asking for *rape*, which is another matter entirely. Rape is an attack in which the victim's life is controlled by the attacker. No person asks for or deserves such an assault. A hitchhiker is asking for a ride, not a violent attack. Part of the problem here lies in the interpretation men put on women's behavior. When women are friendly and cheerful, or helpful, which they have been taught to be, some men interpret this as a "come-on." Whatever the woman meant, she certainly did *not* mean that she wanted to be threatened, beaten, and humiliated. Again this myth, like myth #2, forms a part of "good" women's defense against a sense of vulnerability.

Myth 8: Most rapes occur when women are out alone at night. Most rapes are committed by strangers.

Fact: Depending on the study, statistics indicate that between 1/3 and 2/3 of all rapes occur in either the victim's home or in some other private residence. Rapes occur at all hours of the day or night. Anyone, regardless of residence, social or economic class, age, appearance, or other factors, can be a victim of rape.

Most studies find that at least 50% of all rapists were known, at least slightly, by their victims. This figure may actually be low, because many studies deal only with *reported* cases of rape. Victims may be more reluctant to report when the assailants are people they know. The rapist can be, and often is, a relative, a friend, or some other trusted acquaintance.

Myth 9: Sexual assault occurs only in large cities.

Fact: Although the reported number of assaults is higher in an urban area, sexual assault does happen in every area — the city, the suburbs, and rural areas.

Myth 10: Many rapes involve black men and white women.

Fact: FBI statistics show that 3% of rapes involve black men and white women, and 4% involve white men and black women. Most rapes involve a rapist and victim of the same race and socioeconomic status.

Myth 11: Only young, attractive women are raped.

Fact: Although women between the ages of 15 and 25 are at somewhat higher risk of sexual assault than other age groups, victims of reported rapes in Minnesota have ranged in age from 6 months to 93 years old.

Rapists primarily choose their victims by their vulnerability and accessibility, not by their physical appearance. Victims are of every age, shape, race and class.

APPENDIX THREE-B

A NOTE TO THOSE CLOSEST TO RAPE VICTIMS: HOW YOU CAN HELP*

How does rape affect a woman? How does rape affect those closest to the rape victim? How can you help? Far more than anyone else, it is the people closest to the victim who influence how she will deal with the attack.

Most women who have been raped react to the terror and the fear that is involved. Often a woman's immediate reaction is "I could have been killed." The best way for you to understand what she is feeling is to try to remember a situation where you felt powerless and afraid. You may remember feeling very alone, fearful, and needing comfort.

Often a raped woman needs much love and support. Affection is very important. Try to show her, in your own way, that you care about her and that you would like to help. This can help to break down her loneliness and alienation.

It seems advisable for the woman to talk about the rape; however, it is not possible to generalize about how much the victim should be encouraged to talk about it. Most women do not seem to like specific questions; they tend to seem probing and callous. To probe in these areas may only make it harder for the woman to deal with the rape because she may feel like you are judging her.

Instead you should share feelings and ask her what bothers her. These should not be threatening and should allow her to talk about her most immediate concerns. Remember, too, the woman may want to talk about other things. Often the rape may leave the woman concentrating on other problems and it is important that she talk about these. Probably the most practical suggestion is that you communicate your own willingness to let her talk. Because of your closeness to her, the woman may be more sensitive to your feelings. If the rape distresses you, it may be impossible for her to talk to you. She may also try to protect you. In these and other such cases, where she really will not be able to talk with you — encourage her to talk to someone she trusts. Remember that the rape has brought on feelings of powerlessness — encourage her to talk to whom she wishes, when she wants. This may be more helpful than feeling that it is necessary to talk to you. If she feels she needs professional help, encourage her to do so. This is not a sign of weakness or failure on your part or on her part. Most of us need special help at times of crisis.

Whether or not counseling is sought, it is not a replacement for warm, concerned, loving communication. A counselor may help, but he or she can not replace your role in the victim's life. Rape not only affects the woman, but also you, as it plays upon your own fears and fantasies. Try to recognize the fears for what they are; otherwise you may end up projecting them on the woman and cause some serious problems for your relationship with her. Give her the right to make her own decisions. Don't be over-protective.

It should be noted that, if the woman has pressed charges, the whole process of prosecution involves much stress. Your awareness of the legal processes and problems involved, and your support will be helpful.

*Reprinted with the permission of D.C. Rape Crisis Center, Washington, D.C., and adapted by Sue Remus.

CHAPTER FOUR

THE PROSECUTION OF SEXUAL ASSAULT CRIMES

CHAPTER FOUR

**THE PROSECUTION OF
SEXUAL ASSAULT CRIMES**

I. Introduction	79
II. The Minnesota Criminal Sexual Conduct Law	79
A. Introduction	79
B. Definitions	80
C. Degrees of Criminal Sexual Conduct	81
E. Evidence	83
F. Victim Identity in Court Records	84
G. Court Instructions	84
H. Voluntary Relationships	84
I. Cost of Medical Exam	84
J. Age of Consent	84
K. Resulting Death Defined as Murder	84
III. The Court Process	84
A. Filing the Complaint (Charges) Indictment	85
B. Initial Court Appearance (Presentment Hearing)	85
C. Omnibus Hearing	85
D. Arraignment	86
E. Plea Bargaining	86
F. Trial	86
G. Sentencing	87
H. Appeal	87
I. Release	87
IV. Protocol for the Prosecution of Sexual Assault Cases	87
A. General Principles	87
B. Role of the Prosecuting Attorney	88

C. Role of the Victim Support Person	89
D. The Victim's Role in the Prosecution	90
E. Other Considerations in the Prosecution of Sex Crimes ..	92
1. Pretrial Preparations	92
2. Physical Evidence	93
3. Depositions	94
4. Motions in Limine	94
5. Admissibility of Other Crimes	95
6. The Trial	95
a. Jury Selection	95
b. Opening Statement	95
c. Use of Witnesses in Trial	95
d. Closing Argument	96
7. Jury Instructions	96

Appendix

A. The Minnesota Criminal Sexual Conduct Law (Minnesota Statutes 609.185-609.35)	101
B. The Minnesota Crime Victims Reparations Law (Minnesota Statutes 611A.52-611A.56)	107

THE PROSECUTION OF SEXUAL ASSAULT CRIMES

I. INTRODUCTION

The following guidelines are intended for use by prosecutors' offices throughout the State of Minnesota. The guidelines are intended to be adapted to each prosecutorial office, taking into consideration the particular needs of the community, as well as the variations in size of jurisdictions and in staffing patterns, which directly affect the availability of time and resources in any given prosecutor's office.

Since effective criminal sexual prosecution relies on the combined efforts of law enforcement, medical, social service and prosecutorial personnel, it is necessary to be aware of the responsibilities of one another when dealing with sexual assault. Therefore, it is recommended that prosecutorial personnel be familiar with the guidelines presented elsewhere in this manual for law enforcement, medical, and social service personnel.

This Chapter, *The Prosecution of Sexual Assault Crimes*, presents a summary of the Minnesota Criminal Sexual Conduct Law which, when originally adopted in 1975, made major changes affecting prosecution of sexual assault cases. Subsequent amendments have expanded, clarified and updated the statute to make it a model code.

An explanation of the court process is also provided, both as a synopsis for legal personnel to use in familiarizing victims and other witnesses, and also as background information for non-legal personnel whose responsibility it may be to prepare and/or support the victim through the legal proceedings. The chapter also presents general principles that should govern the prosecution of sexual assault cases, the role of the prosecuting attorney, the role of the victim support person, the victim's role in the prosecution, and other considerations specific to the prosecution process in sexual assault cases.

II. THE MINNESOTA CRIMINAL SEXUAL CONDUCT LAW

A. *Introduction*

In order to achieve effective prosecution of sexual assault crimes, it is essential that law enforcement, medical, social service as well as prosecutorial personnel be aware of the legal standards required by the State of Minnesota.

In 1975, the Minnesota Legislature took a significant step when it enacted a new and far-reaching Criminal Sexual Conduct Law (Minnesota Statutes Sections 609.341-609.351)*. As the law has been applied through experience to actual cases, additional categories of offenses have been added to fill perceived gaps or shortcomings and definitions modified. Under the current law, criminal sexual conduct includes not only "rape" (traditionally defined as forced sexual intercourse on a woman not married to the assailant) but also same-sex assault, marital rape, any forced non-consensual sexual activity, sexual exploitation by therapists and child sexual abuse. The law is gender neutral. It also provides a rational scheme for determining the degrees of severity in sex crimes. In addition, the statute states that resistance by the victim and corroboration of the victim is not required, and neither the victim's prior sexual activities, nor his or her medical or personal history in sexual exploitation cases, may be offered into evidence except in cer-

*See Appendix A for a complete copy of the law.

tain narrowly prescribed circumstances. These changes have made Minnesota's sex offense law one of the most progressive in the nation and a model for other states.

B. Definitions

The new definitions are broadly inclusive, yet precisely applicable to any type of sex related offenses.

Actor — Person accused of criminal sexual conduct.

Complainant — Person alleging to have been subjected to criminal sexual conduct.

Force — When an actor commits or threatens to commit a crime against the complainant who reasonably believes the actor is capable of doing what is threatened and therefore causes the complainant to submit to the actor's wishes.

Consent — A voluntary and unmistakable agreement to perform a particular sex act, which must be at the time of the act.

Intimate Parts — Includes the primary genital areas, groin, inner thighs, buttocks, or breast of any person.

Mentally Impaired — A person who, as a result of inadequately developed or impaired intelligence or a substantial psychiatric disorder of thought or mood, lacks the judgment to give a reasoned consent to sexual contact or to sexual penetration.

Mentally Incapacitated — A person who is rendered temporarily incapable of understanding or controlling his/her conduct due to the influence of alcohol, drugs, or any other substance administered to that person without consent, or due to any other act committed upon that person without his/her agreement.

Personal Injury — Bodily harm, severe mental anguish or pregnancy.

Physically Helpless — A person unable to communicate that he/she does not consent to an act and that condition is known, or reasonably should have been known, to the actor. Typically, this would be a person unconscious, asleep or physically handicapped.

Position of Authority — A parent or guardian or a person who, even for a brief period, is responsible for the health, welfare or supervision of a child. This could include teachers, coaches, probation officers, clergy, police, therapists, etc.

Sexual Contact — Includes the following acts committed without the complainant's consent (except where consent makes no difference, such as with a child), for the purpose of satisfying the actor's aggressive or sexual impulses:

- (a) intentional touching by the actor of complainant's intimate parts;
- (b) touching by complainant of another's intimate parts through coercion or use of a position of authority, or by inducement if the complainant is under 13 years old or mentally impaired (neither coercion nor use of a position of authority is required when complainant has a significant relationship to the assailant);
- (c) touching by another of the complainant's intimate parts through coercion or the use of a position of authority (neither coercion nor use of a position of authority is required when complainant has a significant relationship to the assailant);
- (d) in any of the above instances, the touching of the clothing covering the immediate area of the intimate parts.

Sexual Penetration — Sexual intercourse, cunnilingus, fellatio, anal intercourse or any intrusion, no matter how slight, into the genital or anal openings of complainant's body by any part of the actor's body or any object used by the actor, if accomplished without complainant's consent (except in circumstances where consent is not a legal defense). Emission of semen is not necessary to a finding of sexual penetration.

Coercion — Words or circumstances that cause the complainant reasonably to fear that the actor will inflict bodily harm upon, or hold in confinement, the complainant or another person.

Significant relationship — A situation in which the actor is the complainant's parent, stepparent or guardian; any of the following by blood, marriage or adoption: brother, sister, stepbrother, stepsister, first cousin, aunt, uncle, nephew, niece, grandparent, great-grandparent, great-uncle, or great-aunt; or an adult residing intermittently or regularly in the same dwelling as complainant (except complainant's spouse). (This term replaces the previous term of "intrafamilial relationship" which was more precise but which tended, especially in small communities, to raise a presumption about the victim's identity.)

Patient — A person who seeks or obtains psychotherapeutic services.

Psychotherapist — A physician, psychologist, nurse, chemical dependency counselor, social worker, clergy, or other person, whether or not licensed by the state, who performs or purports to perform psychotherapy.

Psychotherapy — The professional treatment, assessment, or counseling of a mental or emotional illness, symptom or condition.

Emotionally Dependent — The nature of a patient's emotional condition and the nature of the treatment provided by the psychotherapist are such that the psychotherapist knows or has reason to know that the patient is unable to withhold consent to sexual contact or penetration by the psychotherapist.

Therapeutic Deception — a representation by a psychotherapist that the sexual contact or penetration by the psychotherapist is consistent with or part of the patient's treatment.

C. *Degrees of Criminal Sexual Conduct*

The law defines four degrees of criminal sexual conduct. Generally, the major distinction between the degrees are: (1) First and Third degrees both require penetration; (2) Second and Fourth degrees both require contact; (3) in all other respects First and Second are identical and Third and Fourth are substantially identical. The most serious degree is First, the least serious, Fourth. All four degrees are felony offenses.

First degree criminal sexual conduct occurs when the actor sexually penetrates another person and one of the following circumstances exists:

- a. The complainant is under 13 years old and the actor is more than three years older (mistake of the complainant's age or complainant's consent are not legal defenses); or
- b. The complainant is at least 13 but less than 16 years old and the actor is more than four years older *and* is in a position of authority over complainant, and uses this authority to cause the complainant to submit (mistake of age and consent are not legal defenses); or
- c. Circumstances at the time of the act cause the complainant to reasonably fear that great bodily harm will result to him/her if he/she does not submit; or
- d. The actor has a dangerous weapon and threatens complainant with it to cause complainant to submit; or
- e. The actor inflicts personal injury on the complainant *and* either 1) forces sexual penetration, or 2) knows or has reason to know the complainant is mentally impaired, mentally incapacitated or physically helpless; or
- f. The actor is aided by others who use force or a dangerous weapon to get complainant to submit; or

- g. The actor has a significant relationship to the complainant and complainant is under 16 (again, mistake of age or consent are not legal defense); or
- h. The actor has a significant relationship to the complainant, the complainant is under 16 *and* one or more of the following aggravating factors exist: force, coercion, dangerous weapon, circumstances caused fear of great bodily harm, personal injury *or the sexual abuse consisted of multiple acts over an extended period of time.*

COMMENT:

The multiple acts provision is the most frequently used aggravating circumstance in charging sexual abuse cases involving a significant relationship. While both g and h are First Degree charges, a conviction under g (single act without aggravating circumstances) allows the sentencing judge to stay an otherwise presumptively executed prison sentence *if* this is in the best interest of the complainant or the family *and* the defendant has been professionally assessed as amendable to treatment. In such a case, the defendant must serve some local jail or workhouse time *and* successfully complete treatment as conditions of probation.

Second degree criminal sexual conduct occurs:

- a. If the actor has sexual *contact* (first degree requires penetration) with another *and*
- b. One of the above (a–h) circumstances of first degree exists.

Third degree criminal sexual conduct requires sexual penetration and occurs if one of the following circumstances exists:

- a. Complainant is under 13 years old and the actor no more than three years older (in First and Second degrees, actor must be more than three years older); or
- b. Complainant is at least 13 but not yet 16 and actor is more than two years older (actor's belief that complainant is over 16 may be a legal defense; however, consent is not a legal defense); if actor is not more than 4 years older than complainant, penalty is less severe; or
- c. The actor uses force or coercion, but without inflicting personal injury; or
- d. The actor knows complainant is mentally impaired, mentally incapacitated or physically helpless (consent is no legal defense).
- e. Complainant is at least 16 but less than 18 years old and actor is more than 4 years older and in a position of authority, which position the actor uses to cause submission (mistake of the complainant's age or complainant's consent are not legal defenses).
- f. The actor has a significant relationship to the complainant and complainant is between 16 and 18 (neither mistake of age nor consent is a legal defense); or
- g. The actor has a significant relationship to the complainant, the complainant is between 16 and 18 *and* one or more of the following aggravating circumstances exist: force, coercion, dangerous weapon, circumstances caused fear of great

bodily harm, personal injury or the sexual abuse consisted of multiple acts over an extended period of time;* or

- h. The actor is a psychotherapist and complainant is actor's patient and the sexual act occurred during a psychotherapy session. Consent is not a defense; or
- i. The actor is a psychotherapist and complainant is actor's patient or former patient who is emotionally dependent upon actor; or
- j. The actor is a psychotherapist and complainant is actor's patient or former patient and the sexual act occurred by means of therapeutic deception. Consent is not a defense.

Fourth degree criminal sexual conduct occurs:

- a. if the actor has sexual *contact* with another *and*
- b. one of the above (a, and c-j) circumstances of third degree exists, or
- c. Complainant is between 13 and 16 years old and actor is more than *four* years older *or* is in a position of authority, which position the actor uses to cause submission (actor's belief that complainant is over age 16 may be a legal defense).

NOTE: In Minnesota the law states that a child under 14 years of age is incapable of committing a crime and must be prosecuted in juvenile court. A finding of delinquency in juvenile court is not a criminal record. A child between 14 and 18 years of age is presumed incapable of committing a crime, but if the juvenile correctional facilities are inadequate for rehabilitating the child or the child represents a danger to the community, the child can be certified by the juvenile court to stand trial as an adult. A person who is 18 years of age or older is an adult under Minnesota law.

D. *Subsequent Offenses*

The law provides a minimum three-year sentence for a second offense within a fifteen-year period following the first offense.

E. *Evidence*

The law (M.S.609.347) provides the following evidentiary rules in a sexual assault prosecution:

- 1) The law specifically states that the victim's testimony need *not* be corroborated.
- 2) The victim is *not* required to have resisted the actor.
- 3) The victim's previous sexual conduct may *not* be used in court. The very specific exceptions to this general rule are:
 - a) when the victim has engaged in similar sexual behavior under similar circumstances (including prior false claims of assault) in the prior calendar year and the actor-defendant claims either that the victim consented to the act or fabricated the incident;
 - b) when evidence of semen, venereal disease or a state of pregnancy is offered to help prove the crime and there is an alternate explanation for the evidence.

*See Comment to Criminal Sexual Conduct in First Degree. The same applies to f and g of Criminal Sexual Conduct in the Third and Fourth Degrees.

- c) evidence of past sexual conduct between the complainant and the defendant;
 - d) evidence to rebut testimony the complainant gave at the trial;
- 4) In prosecutions of alleged sexual exploitation by therapists, evidence of the patient's personal or medical history is not admissible unless the court finds, at a pretrial hearing, that it is relevant and that the probative value outweighs the prejudicial value. The court must narrowly specify what information (if any) is admissible, and it is grounds for mistrial if the order is violated.

Introduction of the above exceptions must be in accordance with a set procedure that requires court review and court permission *before* any such evidence can be presented at the trial.

F. *Victim Identity in Court Records*

In child sex abuse cases, no data contained in records and reports pertaining to a complaint or indictment that specifically identifies the victim is accessible to the public, except by court order. Otherwise, court files are open to the public.

G. *Court Instructions*

The court *cannot* instruct juries that:

- a) A complainant who has consented to prior sexual intercourse with other persons would be likely to have consented to intercourse with the defendant or;
- b) Criminal sexual conduct is easily charged but difficult to disprove; or
- c) The complainant's testimony should be scrutinized more closely than that of any other witness in any other felony case.

H. *Voluntary Relationships*

Marriage or an ongoing voluntary sexual relationship between an adult victim and assailant does not preclude prosecution for criminal sexual conduct. Adults are covered under the law regardless of whether they are married to the assailant or whether they are living apart or together.

I. *Cost of Medical Evidentiary Exam*

The law provides that the county where the crime has been committed shall pay the expense for the medical examination conducted to gather evidence for possible prosecution.

J. *Age of Consent*

The law specifies the age of consent as 16. However, consent cannot be used as a defense when the complainant is 16 or 17 years old and the actor either uses a position of authority to cause submission or has a significant (i.e., familial) relationship to the complainant.

K. *Resulting Death Defined as First Degree Murder*

The law makes death caused while committing First or Second degree criminal sexual conduct subject to a First degree murder charge.

III. THE COURT PROCESS

The following explanation of the court process is intended for use by:

- 1) Non-legal personnel, who may be unfamiliar with the process and whose responsi-

bility it may be to prepare and/or support the victim throughout the legal proceedings;

- 2) Prosecuting attorneys, as a synopsis that can be used to familiarize the victim with the court process and thereby demystify the legal proceedings for which it is essential to gain the victim's cooperation.

There are various levels in the court process that a person passes through before the case gets to trial:

A. *Filing the Complaint (Charges) — Indictment*

Charges may be filed against the suspect by means of either a complaint or an indictment, both of which have the same legal effect, i.e. to institute a prosecution. In Minnesota, charges are usually instituted by complaint. A complaint is issued under the authority of the county attorney while an indictment is issued by a grand jury. Both set forth the offenses with which the suspect is charged. The victim may be asked to sign the complaint although most complaints are signed by the investigating officer after having been prepared by the county attorney according to the facts presented. The complaint sets out the basic facts in support of the allegation that a crime has been committed and that the defendant committed it. In many counties, the county attorney summarizes these facts in writing; in some counties, the investigative reports are simply attached to the complaint. By either method, the charges and facts supporting them are filed with the court and are public record (except records disclosing the identity of a child sex abuse victim). In the case of an indictment, the victim will be asked to testify before the grand jury which meets in secret to decide whether it feels there is sufficient evidence to warrant a prosecution. Because the grand jury's proceedings are secret, the indictment filed contains only the charges.

B. *Initial Court Appearance*

Soon after arrest and filing of charges, the defendant has an initial appearance in court when bail, if any, will be set, and the defendant is advised of the right to counsel and of the nature of the charges. The court will appoint counsel to represent the defendant if the defendant cannot afford to hire an attorney.

C. *Omnibus Hearing*

The omnibus hearing is usually held in District Court. In some Minnesota counties this hearing may be held before the County Court but the procedure is the same. The purpose of the omnibus hearing is to:

- 1) Show probable cause that the offenses charged were, in fact, committed;
- 2) Show probable cause that the suspect charged was, in fact, the assailant; and
- 3) Determine whether any of the defendant's constitutional rights were violated by reason of a search and seizure, by reason of any statements he/she may have made to the police, or by reason of the identification procedures used in the case, such as a lineup or showing photographs.

When the offense is charged by indictment, probable cause has been found by the grand jury. Therefore, the only purpose of the omnibus hearing under indictment is to determine whether the defendant's constitutional rights have been violated.

In cases charged by complaint, probable cause is usually found by a judge on the basis of the facts provided in the complaint, which is a sworn document. This will include a summary of the victim's statement. Absent the most compelling and unusual of circumstances, a victim may not be required to testify at the omnibus hearing. This is because the rules of criminal procedure already require the prosecution to disclose its

case fully to the defense. As long as what has been disclosed is sufficient to establish probable cause, the defense is not entitled to subject a witness to a pretrial "fishing expedition" in the courtroom.

If the victim's testimony is required, he/she will be questioned under oath before a judge by both an attorney from the county attorney's office and by the defendant's attorney in the presence of the defendant. Prior to the omnibus hearing the victim will have been interviewed and prepared by the county attorney.

The defendant has the right to waive the omnibus hearing and consideration of the constitutional or probable cause questions. Waiver of the probable cause aspects of the omnibus hearing simply means that the defendant acknowledges that probable cause exists. The defendant does not admit guilt by waiving the omnibus hearing. The purpose of the omnibus hearing is simply to determine whether or not there is probable cause to hold the defendant for trial and to determine whether evidence obtained from the defendant is constitutionally admissible against the defendant at the trial. If the defendant either waives the right to an omnibus hearing or the judge finds that probable cause exists, the defendant will be ordered to stand trial.

D. Arraignment

The next step is arraignment at which time the defendant enters a plea of guilty or not guilty. If the defendant pleads guilty and that plea is accepted by the court, the only stage of the criminal process remaining will be the sentencing of the convicted defendant. In the usual criminal case, the defendant pleads not guilty at arraignment and the case is set for trial. This, of course, does not preclude a plea of guilty at a later date.

E. Plea Bargaining

Plea bargaining is an agreement between the prosecution and the defense that recommends a disposition of the case to the court. The prosecutor weighs the strengths and weaknesses of the case and, in light of all the circumstances, may agree to allow the defendant to plead guilty to something less than the maximum offense, or fewer than all the offenses, or make some sentencing concessions (such as agreeing to a stayed sentence or agreeing not to request a sentencing departure). The judge is not bound by any agreement between the prosecution and the defense but generally will accept the settlement they have agreed upon. If the judge does not accept the plea agreement the defendant has the right to withdraw his guilty plea and stand trial. Plea bargaining may occur any time from the time the crime is reported until the case is submitted to the jury. *The victim has the right to object in writing prior to the time of sentencing to the terms of a proposed plea agreement.* Some cases are non-negotiable and the defendant must either stand trial or plead as charged.

F. Trial

If the defendant pleads not guilty and there are no successful plea negotiations, the case will go to trial. At trial the State must prove the defendant committed the act charged beyond any reasonable doubt. The prosecution therefore proceeds first. In most cases, the prosecution will call as witnesses the victim, the police officers, and anyone who may have seen or heard the incident or who has other relevant evidence. The victim will probably be asked to identify the defendant in the courtroom. The victim may also be asked by both prosecution and defense to reconstruct the offense in detail. All testimony is in the presence of the defendant. After the State has rested its case, defense counsel will be allowed to present its witnesses which may include the defendant. The defense is not required to produce any evidence, and the defendant need not testify. When all the evidence has been presented, the court will instruct the jury as to what the applicable law is that

they should use in their deliberations. The jury then retires to the jury room to deliberate and must reach a unanimous decision for a finding of guilty.

G. *Sentencing*

If the defendant is found guilty or pleads guilty, the sentencing process begins. The Court must order a presentence investigation prior to sentencing for felony convictions. The court officer conducting the presentence investigation is required to make a good faith effort to notify the victim of the court verdict or plea agreement, his/her right to request restitution, to be present at the sentencing, and to object in writing to the proposed sentence or plea agreement.

The State of Minnesota has adopted presumptive sentencing guidelines, and the court must follow these guidelines in imposing a sentence. The guidelines provide a specific range of sentences for each type of offense, which vary in severity according to the offender's prior criminal history and the seriousness of the offense. The court may depart from the sentencing guidelines and impose a different sentence if there are mitigating or aggravating factors involved. The sentencing judge must describe any such factors in writing, which are subject to review by a higher court. Within limits, the court has the discretion to sentence the offender to prison, to stay the execution or even imposition of a prison sentence, to order probation and any condition of probation, including local jail or workhouse time, treatment and/or restitution. In the case of a negotiated plea where the penalty has also been negotiated, the court will impose the negotiated sentence.

H. *Appeal*

The State is not able to appeal a final verdict of acquittal. Rule 28.04 of Minnesota Rules of Criminal Procedure does allow the State to appeal pretrial orders by the court (such as the suppression of evidence or the exclusion of the defendant's statements to the police on grounds that the defendant's rights were violated) and any sentence in a felony case. The defendant has a right to appeal both a verdict of guilty (or even a guilty plea) and the sentence received.

I. *Release*

If a defendant is found guilty and has received a jail or prison sentence, the victim has the right to request that he/she be informed prior to the offender's release from the facility where the offender is incarcerated. The victim would also be notified of any extended furlough or work release. To be notified, the victim must mail a written request to the Commissioner of Corrections or the head of the facility where the offender is confined.

IV. PROTOCOL FOR THE PROSECUTION OF SEXUAL ASSAULT CASES

A. *General Principles*

Sexual assault is a traumatic, life-threatening experience for the victim, an act which violates a person's physical and psychological being. Although each victim responds to the sexual assault in a different way, every victim will need the strong support from legal personnel in order to play an effective role in the prosecution of the case. In addition, the victim's emotional adjustment to the sexual assault may be helped or hindered by the quality of his/her contacts with legal personnel.

1. *Concern for the Victim.* Male and/or female members of a prosecutor's office who handle sexual assault cases should possess and display an attitude of sensitivity and concern for the victim. Understanding the victim's feelings and responses to the sexual assault is a key to gaining this sensitivity. (A thorough description of the victim's feelings and responses to the sexual assault is presented in Chapter Three, *Counseling the Victim of Sexual Assault*.)
2. *Rapport with the Victim.* If possible, the prosecutor should enter the case at an early point to develop the needed rapport with the victim. Preferably, the number of different prosecutors dealing with a victim and to whom the victim must relate the incident should be kept to a minimum. Ideally, one prosecutor, assigned to the case at entry, should retain responsibility for the case until final disposition. This enhances the likelihood of rapport with the victim and sound case preparation.
3. *Victim Participation in Decision-Making.* Because the victim of a sexual assault has been through an experience during which the control over his/her life was temporarily in the hands of someone else, it is important throughout the legal process to assist the victim in regaining a sense of control by involving him/her, whenever possible, in the decision-making aspects of the prosecution process (this will be discussed in greater detail under *The Victim's Role in the Prosecution*).
4. *The Victim's Right to be Informed.* The victim should be able to obtain information at all times on the status of the legal proceedings, court dates, etc., whether directly from the prosecutor or from an assigned information person in the prosecutor's office. In addition, the prosecutor should act affirmatively in keeping the victim informed of the development of the case.
5. *Advising the Victim of Other Assistance.* The victim should be advised of the Minnesota Crime Victim's Reparation Law (See Appendix B) and, if applicable, the process for applying should be explained. Additionally, legal personnel should be aware of counseling and medical follow-up services available in the community for victims.

B. *Role of the Prosecuting Attorney*

The county attorney, by statutory delegation from the State Legislature, assumes responsibility for the prosecution of felonies on behalf of the State. Thus, the county attorney will be the prosecuting attorney in sexual assault cases. The prosecutor represents not the victim but the State of Minnesota. The law deems a crime against any individual to be a crime against the State.

1. *Interagency Cooperation.*

- a. *Law Enforcement Agencies.* The county attorney should work closely with local law enforcement personnel to develop guidelines for the investigation, gathering and preservation of evidence necessary for successful prosecution of sexual assault cases. (See Chapter One, *Law Enforcement Investigation of Sexual Assault Crimes*.)
- b. *Medical Facilities.* The county attorney should work cooperatively with local medical personnel to develop acceptable court-tested medical protocols for the examination of the victim and collection of extrinsic evidence. Evidentiary tests should be mutually agreed upon, and care should be taken that any hospital lab

work is closely coordinated with police laboratories. Also, as is the case with the police, prosecutors should ensure that evidence collected by medical facilities is secured in such a manner as to withstand challenges to its chain of custody (See Chapter Two, *The Medical Treatment of Sexual Assault Victims*).

2. *Relating to the Victim.* The county attorney should *encourage* and *prepare* the victim (complainant) to cooperate and testify, by explaining court procedures and legal requirements. This includes interviews before the actual trial as well as those prior to any preliminary proceedings during which the witness is to testify. Preparation not only informs the witness how to listen to and respond properly to questions put by counsel, but also helps prepare him/her for this experience, so as to minimize its traumatic effect. A witness, especially the victim, is often frightened, confused, and reticent. He/she probably has never appeared in court before. He/she needs all the reassurance, assistance, and concern a prosecutor can provide. Although some prosecutors feel the victim should not be "over-prepared" lest his/her testimony seems artificial and contrived, most agree that the whole court process should be explained, and that the victim should be made to feel he/she is an important part of the system. In addition, the victim should be briefed on what questions are likely to be asked, including why certain sexually explicit questions must be asked. He/she should also be assured of the prosecutor's role in protecting the victim from improper questions.

While the prosecutor should be supportive, he/she should not be the primary support person for the victim. It is important for both prosecutor and complainant to be clear about the prosecutor's legal role, and to avoid blurring that role into a counseling or therapeutic one for which most attorneys are not qualified.

3. *Keeping the Victim Informed.* The county attorney should take the responsibility and act affirmatively to keep the victim informed of developments in the case. In addition, the prosecutor may choose to assign an "information person" who could be responsible for:

- Maintaining accurate records of the status of all sexual assault cases.
- Contacting victims and informing them of the progress of their case.
- Answering questions of an informational nature such as court dates.
- Relaying questions of a more personal or evaluative nature to the prosecutor involved.

4. *Facilitating Court Appearances.* Efforts should be made by the county attorney to facilitate court appearances. Some suggestions include:

- Minimizing continuances, and when continuances are sought, providing advance notice to the victim and other witnesses.
- Arranging to have certain witnesses on call, rather than having them wait in the courtroom until the case is called.
- Having a private area or waiting room for the victim to insulate him/her from unnecessary contact with the defendant and/or his/her family or friends.
- Ensuring that the victim knows in advance and has been adequately prepared for each appearance.
- Arranging for a witness support person to accompany the victim to all proceedings, if the victim so chooses.

C. *Role of the Victim Support Person*

It is usually desirable to have a support person available to assist the victim and

witnesses throughout the court process. In fact, Minnesota law specifically authorizes the presence of a support person for any prosecuting witness in a criminal sexual conduct case. In some communities there are existing crisis centers which provide trained staff as victim support persons. In other areas interested persons can be located through volunteer as well as professional service organizations who can then be trained to fill this role. This may be an excellent opportunity to utilize the resources of the community and encourage interested citizens to be active participants in the system.

The victim support person can be of assistance to the prosecutor in the following ways:

- Serving as an information coordinator.
- Serving as a referral source by helping the victim secure follow-up medical treatment, counseling or mental health services, babysitting, and transportation assistance.
- Accompanying the victim and other witnesses to all preliminary proceedings and hearings as well as the trial.
- Accompanying and supporting the victim during any courtroom encounters with the defendant, his/her friends and/or family.
- Informing the prosecutor if misunderstanding or fears develop which the prosecutor might allay.

D. *The Victim's Role in the Prosecution*

1. *The Victim as Evidence.* In a purely conceptual sense the complainant in a prosecution for sexual assault is evidence that the crime has occurred and that it was the defendant who committed it. A criminal prosecution is the State's remedy for a crime committed against the laws of the State.

A person who has been sexually assaulted, however, will more understandably feel that it is he/she, rather than the State, who has been offended. The victim will need to view the criminal justice system as one way he/she can redress this very personal wrong. However, this road can be tortuous, vexing, embarrassing, and uncertain. Once the court process is begun, the complainant will find the situation out of control in most respects.

2. *Participation in Decision-Making Process.* While the criminal justice system perceives the crime of sexual assault as an act against society and attempts to redress its social wrong, it was, in fact, the victim who was assaulted. Because the victim has a very personal interest in the successful prosecution of the crime, the victim's opinion, attitude, and feelings should be considered, whenever possible, in the conduct of the prosecution. This should include the freedom to withdraw from the case if he/she feels unable to withstand the pressures. It would also include participation in decisions concerning charging the case, acceptance of possible pleas to lesser offenses and sentencing options, whenever possible.

- a. *The Decision to File Charges.* Prosecutors are vested with significant discretion in determining whether or not to file charges and what charges to file against a defendant. Frequently, this decision is based on little more than a pragmatic determination, grounded in experience, that a given case is factually too weak to be worth the effort of trying to obtain a conviction. From the victim's perspective, however, this is commonly perceived as disbelief or lack of concern about the sexual assault.

Prior to any filing, the police detective should ascertain whether the victim is willing to prosecute and should inform the victim of the consequences of charging the defendant. The victim should understand his/her responsibility in following through with prosecution once charges are filed, unless there are compelling circumstances.

If practicable, the decision of whether or not to file charges should be made after consultation with the victim, and his/her wishes in this regard should be given real consideration. The police detective, prosecutor, victim, and witness support person, if any, ought to confer, and the victim should be advised of the nature of the court proceedings to follow, the legal and evidentiary problems raised by the case, the probable areas in which the victim will be cross-examined at trial, and the likelihood of a plea or guilty verdict. The victim should also understand his/her civic duties in cooperating with the law enforcement process. Of equal importance is the responsibility of the police and, ultimately, the prosecutor to inform the victim of the legal procedures in a manner least likely to discourage or intimidate the victim.

If the victim chooses not to go forward and if the case cannot be proved without the victim, the case will have to be dropped. On the other hand, if the prosecution believes the case cannot be won even with the victim's testimony and therefore chooses to close the matter, the victim has a right to know the reasons for this decision. It is important to assure the victim that his/her truthfulness is not in question. Ultimately, the victim must understand that the responsibility for this decision is the prosecutor's only and will be based primarily on legal considerations.

- b. *The Decision to Withdraw.* The right of a victim to withdraw from the prosecution after commencement may present serious problems. Once the victim has committed to prosecution, it is important to advise the victim that withdrawal is expected only for good cause, such as his/her health and well-being.
- c. *Participation in Other Decisions.* Whenever possible, the prosecutor should discuss major decisions affecting the prosecution with the victim. For example, in the case of plea negotiations, the victim should be made aware of the elements of the crime to which the plea is being accepted. The prosecutor should inform the victim that acceptance of a plea to a lesser charge in no way diminishes the validity of the victim's complaint. Similarly, if a victim is reluctant to go to trial and strongly prefers that the case be disposed of by plea to a lesser offense, his/her preferences should be considered. In addition, the victim should be informed of the sentencing disposition.

Sometimes the prosecutor may decide to refer a defendant into a pre-trial diversion program instead of prosecuting the case. In such instances, prosecutors are required by law to make every reasonable effort to notify and seek input from the victim/s prior to making such a referral.

- 3. *The Victim as a Witness.* The prosecutor's instructions to the victim in preparation for testimony should include the following:
 - a. The absolute and complete truth must be told to the police, the prosecutor, and the court when testifying. The victim should not be concerned about whether something sounds good or bad.

- b. During the testimony, each question asked should be answered completely, but the answer should not go beyond the question asked. If more information is needed, another question will be asked.
- c. If a question during testimony is not understood, the victim should ask to have it repeated or rephrased. The victim should be certain to understand the question before trying to answer it.
- d. If an objection is made to any question asked, the person testifying should wait until the judge rules on the objection before answering the question.
- e. The victim's manner of dress and appearance in court may be important. The jury's verdict must be unanimous and if any one juror is offended by the victim's manner of dress, that juror could prevent a conviction no matter how strong the proof against the assailant.
- f. The victim has the right to refuse to state his/her home or employment address in open court. This may help lessen a victim's fears of retaliation by the defendant by protecting the confidentiality of the victim's address.

E. *Other Considerations in the Prosecution of Sex Crimes*

1. *Pretrial Preparations.* In preparing for a trial of a sexual assault case it should be kept in mind that, due to mistaken attitudes about sexual assault, some juries still have a tendency to "try" the victim. Although the Minnesota Criminal Sexual Conduct Law does not require corroborating evidence in sex crimes, many juries will not convict without some kind of corroborating testimony. Therefore, in the prosecution of sex crimes, it is important to establish the credibility of the victim. The case should be assembled with that thought in mind, with each witness corroborating as much as possible the testimony of the victim and underscoring the credibility of the victim.
 - a. *Preparing the Victim.* Early contact with the victim is desirable to begin building a relationship to assure full cooperation. A complete explanation of what legal steps will be taken should be given to the victim. Problem areas of the case as well as any questions concerning the victim's personal life that may be asked should be discussed openly with the victim.

From the very beginning it is important to impress on the victim the importance of telling the complete truth. The tendency to assume guilt for the attack is common in victims of sexual assault and should be kept in mind when interviewing the victim. Sometimes victims will avoid what seems to be a minor point in an effort to appear totally blameless. This is particularly true in instances such as hitchhiking where some sort of consensual act by the victim may be a factor in the sexual assault. The victim should be asked to go over all written reports or transcripts of his or her prior statements about the offense and to scrutinize them carefully for any errors or omissions. The victim should also be given a copy since this will be the base used by the defense for cross examination. It is important that any falsehoods which have been told to the police are discussed and resolved, and that the complete truth is told when the victim is placed under oath.

Grand jury transcripts and all police reports, including the statements of the victim, are discoverable by the defense under the Minnesota Rules of Criminal

Procedure. The victim should also be appraised of and asked to respond to the defendant's version of what happened.

Prior to trial the prosecuting attorney should familiarize the victim with the courtroom procedures, take him/her into the courtroom, and discuss the importance of dress and appearance in the courtroom at the time of trial.

The prosecuting attorney should make the victim aware that testifying may involve some amount of time away from work or other duties, but that employers are forbidden from penalizing an employee who is attending court or testifying as a victim of a crime. In addition, the victim should be informed that the prosecutor will make every reasonable effort to provide advance notice of any change of schedule in court proceedings in which the victim will be testifying. Statutory witness fees, which may cover expenses and wages, can minimize financial loss for witnesses.

A victim support person can be a valuable liaison between the prosecutor and the victim in helping the victim understand the legal process and the delays which are normal in the criminal justice process. The victim support person can provide information and support that the victim needs at this time as well as feedback to the prosecutor about any problems that arise.

- b. *Preparing Other Witnesses.* One witness who should be interviewed early is the first person/s to whom the victim spoke after the assault. Their conversation is admissible under the "prompt complaint" theory and is used to corroborate the victim's testimony. If the police report does not indicate the identity of this person, this information should be obtained from the victim at the earliest possible time and the details and circumstances of this conversation documented before they are forgotten.

Other witnesses who can be very useful to the prosecution are those who observed struggling, heard screams or witnessed any other events which would indicate lack of consent on the part of the victim. Witnesses who can testify in such a manner as to indicate this lack of consent are particularly important since the defense that the act was consensual is frequently used by counsel for the defendant in sexual assault cases.

If the investigating officer is to testify in court, the officer should be interviewed prior to trial by the prosecuting attorney.

Medical evidence is often the only tangible evidence available in a sexual assault case. If the examining physician will be called to testify, it is important to conduct an interview prior to trial to ascertain his/her ability to interpret the various medical tests which are performed during the examination of the victim. The physician should be prepared to testify about the statements the victim gave at the time of examination in regard to the incident, the victim's appearance, mental or emotional state, and the results of any tests which were performed. Minimizing a physician's courtroom time will most often result in extremely cooperative efforts by the physician. Physicians almost uniformly have very busy schedules and making an effort to accommodate them will facilitate prosecution efforts.

2. *Physical Evidence.* The county attorney should work closely with local law enforcement and medical facilities to develop guidelines for the gathering and

preservation of evidence needed for successful prosecution of sexual assault cases. Detailed guidelines indicating the specific evidence to be gathered by law enforcement and medical personnel are contained in Chapter One, **Law Enforcement Investigation of Sexual Assault Cases**, and Chapter Two, **The Medical Treatment of Sexual Assault Victims**. The Bureau of Criminal Apprehension Laboratory's capabilities are also presented in these two sections.

In determining the specific evidence to be introduced in the trial of a sex crime, the prosecuting attorney should not overlook physical evidence that a jury can touch, hold in their hands, and take back to the jury room with them. The clothing the victim was wearing, photographs of the scene, fingerprints of the assailant, weapons and hair samples are all examples of physical evidence which can be introduced into the trial.

- a. If the attack took place in a deserted area, a photograph of the scene can help clarify the scene for the jury as well as establish the lack of consent by showing that the victim had no choice but to submit.
 - b. If there is a question of identity, fingerprints can be extremely useful. The FBI has conducted additional testing of a method of obtaining fingerprints from skin. These fingerprints are developed by a chemical method and can be recovered if the skin of a live victim is treated within an hour and one-half of the incident.*
 - c. The victim's body and the clothing of the victim will frequently show the presence of seminal fluid. The Bureau of Criminal Apprehension Laboratory has the facilities for testing the clothing of the victim and also any material which might contain traces of seminal fluid. The lab also has the capability of testing hair samples for consistency or inconsistency with the hair of the victim and the assailant. Photographs may also be taken of bruises and lacerations on the body of the victim, preferably in color, and in a manner so that only the affected area is shown.
3. *Depositions.* Depositions of victims in sex crime cases are possible in Minnesota although rare. If full disclosure of the victim's version of the facts has been made, particularly if a formal transcribed statement has been taken, deposition should be avoidable. No prosecutor should allow the deposition of a victim without complete exhaustion of objection and remedies. If the unusual circumstances allowing deposition (Minnesota Rules of Criminal Procedures, 21.06) actually exist, the prosecutor should review the case for alternatives. The prosecuting attorney should take the time to talk with any persons to be deposed prior to the deposition. The reason for the deposition should be carefully explained to each of them (i.e., deposition used as discovery or for the purpose of impeachment). Before the deposition, the victim should be allowed to refresh his/her memory from statements given to the police at the time of the incident. The prosecutor should attempt to limit the purpose and scope of deposition by obtaining a precise court ruling in advance and by making appropriate objections.
 4. *Motions in Limine.* An important trial tool for the prosecutor can be a motion in limine. A motion in limine can be used to exclude any mention of the victim's prior sexual conduct on grounds of 609.347 and alert the court to the necessity of an in-camera hearing for such matters. It can limit defense counsel's ability to

*Information on this method can be obtained by contacting: Director of FBI, Washington, D.C. 20537, Attention: Latent Fingerprint Section, (202) 324-2163.

inquire into areas which can be damaging to the victim's credibility but have no bearing on the issues of the charge. Examples of this may be the presence of venereal disease in the victim, illegitimate children, or an unconventional life-style. However, motions in limine should be attempted with extreme care inasmuch as courts are frequently reluctant to make any evidentiary rulings prior to trial.

5. *Admissibility of Other Crimes.* A significant number of defendants may have convictions of a similar offense. This is particularly true in cases involving children. In general, Minnesota law does not allow inquiry into any convictions of crimes unrelated to the current charge unless the defendant testifies, in which case any other prior convictions or evidence of similar conduct may be admissible.

A line of cases has developed in Minnesota which has allowed the introduction, particularly in sex cases, of evidence the defendant has committed crimes or conduct of a similar nature, primarily *State v. Spreigl* and *State v. Billstrom*. The Spreigl case allowed evidence of similar conduct to establish the defendant's identity, state of mind, common scheme or plan as well as other characteristics. Evidence of similar conduct need not involve a conviction or even a charge but must be clear and convincing (note: the standard is *not* proof beyond a reasonable doubt). Where there is evidence the defendant has previously sexually abused others and if those prior victims are willing to testify, their aid as Spreigl witnesses to help prove the case in chief is immeasurable. Not infrequently, prior victims who did not wish to prosecute their own crimes (or whose own cases were too weak to prosecute) are willing to come forward to help another case when they learn the defendant has struck again.

6. *The Trial.* No article can fully convey the "How To" of trying any case, civil or criminal. Trial practice courses in law school give the basics and continuing legal education courses refine them. However, the trial of sex crimes is uniquely different from the trial of other crimes. The following considerations are based on the experience of a number of prosecutors in Minnesota who have prosecuted criminal sexual assault cases and who agree with the generalizations made.

- a. *Jury Selection.* Jury selection should be done with the knowledge that sexual assault usually engenders strong responses in prospective jurors. Due to the many myths about sexual assault many prospective jurors may communicate an attitude of disbelief. The prosecuting attorney should carefully, though indirectly, attempt to determine the attitudes of prospective jurors and select the jury on the basis of their awareness and sensitivity to the problem of sexual assault, focusing, to the extent the court allows, on the characteristics of the particular case (e.g. preparing the jury for the fact that the assault was not the stereotyped stranger jumping out of the bushes but an acquaintance).

- b. *Opening Statement.* The opening statement should be used to give all the facts of the case to the jury. Some prosecuting attorneys prefer vague opening statements as a precaution against minor changes in witness testimony.

- c. *Use of Witnesses in Trial.* The victim of the crime is often the first witness called. Taking time to talk in advance of the trial, explaining the courtroom procedure, and showing the courtroom is important both for the case and for the victim's well-being. Since it is probable that the victim will not have seen the defendant since the attack he/she should be prepared to identify the defendant in the courtroom. Ask the victim to point out the defendant in a positive and forceful manner so the jury will not doubt the identification. Questions to the

victim which elicit the fear, terror, and humiliation which most victims experience during the sexual assault will help the jury experience these emotions along with the victim.

In general, the victim should not remain in the courtroom after testifying. His/her presence may be distracting to the jury and hearing the testimony of other witnesses may be distressing to the victim. His/her presence may also lead the jury to believe the trial is a personal vendetta rather than a criminal case. Care should be taken in argument to stress that the victim is a witness to a crime and the State is the plaintiff, not the victim.

An important piece of evidence allowable uniquely in sex cases is any statement made by the victim about the sexual assault to others, particularly the earliest statements made. These statements, including a description of the circumstances surrounding them and their emotional content, can be valuable corroboration of the truthfulness of the victim's story. The person to whom the statement was made is called as a witness. In cases involving child sexual abuse victims under age 10 or mentally impaired persons, cases may be brought to trial using this hearsay as evidence (if it is shown to be reliable) even if the victim cannot testify, as long as there is some other corroborating evidence of the crime (M.S. 595.02, subd. 3).

Presenting witnesses in chronological order, although not required, makes the case easier for the jury to follow. If damaging statements were made by the defendant, the officer who took them should be presented as the final witness. A strong finish is always preferable, especially if no defense is presented.

- d. *Closing Argument.* The closing argument should begin with the first witness. It is important to decide the theory of the case early and keep it uppermost in the mind as the case is presented, filling it out with the responses of the witnesses. The theory and the answers of the witnesses will make up the argument. Many of the defense counsel's arguments can be anticipated and should be responded to in the prosecuting attorney's argument, since there is no opportunity for rebuttal after the defense argument.

When the victim has not been physically injured or is not obviously vulnerable (such as a child), juries often have a difficult time seeing a sexual assault as a violent crime. Arguments which stress the criminal acts, the invasion of privacy, the imposition of one person's will on another, the victim's lack of choice, and the continuing fear experienced by the victim should be used. Jurors will better understand any errors of judgment by the victim when reminded that all of us, including the victim, have 20-20 hindsight.

The explanation of the jury instructions should not be overlooked during the closing argument. Jurors should be reminded that only the essential elements of the crime need be proved beyond a reasonable doubt, not every fact in the case. Correlating the facts of the case with the jury instructions helps jurors put them in the proper perspective. If there are lesser and included offenses, they should be explained from the lowest to the highest with appropriate facts to support the verdicts. The explanation should be ended with a call for a verdict of the highest offense.

7. *Jury Instructions.* Minnesota's Criminal Sexual Conduct Law *absolutely precludes* the use of the following jury instructions:

- a) It may be inferred that a complainant who has previously consented to sexual intercourse with persons other than the defendant would be therefore more likely to consent to sexual intercourse with the defendant; or
- b) The complainant's previous or subsequent sexual conduct in and of itself may be considered in determining the credibility of the complainant; or
- c) Criminal sexual conduct is a crime easily charged by a complainant but very difficult to disprove by a defendant because of the heinous nature of the crime; or
- d) The jury should scrutinize the testimony of the complainant any more closely than the testimony of any other witness in felony prosecution.
- e) In order to convict the defendant, the jury must find the complainant resisted to the utmost of his/her ability.

The prosecution's jury instructions can, in most instances, be quoted directly from the statute. The applicable degree of criminal sexual conduct and the attendant definition in the statute should be set forth in the instructions. If there is more than one count of criminal sexual conduct charged, it is advisable that the definition for each count be included in the jury instructions by the prosecutor.

APPENDIX

CHAPTER FOUR

APPENDIX FOUR-A

The Minnesota Criminal Sexual Conduct Law (Minnesota Statutes 609.185–609.35)

609.185 Murder in the First Degree

Whoever does either of the following is guilty of murder in the first degree and shall be sentenced to imprisonment for life:

- (1) Causes the death of a human being with premeditation and with intent to effect the death of such person or of another; or
- (2) Causes the death of a human being while committing or attempting to commit criminal sexual conduct in the first or second degree with force or violence, either upon or affecting such person or another.

609.341 Definitions

Subdivision 1. For the purpose of sections 609.341 to 609.351, the terms in this section have the meanings given them.

Subd. 2. "Actor" means a person accused of criminal sexual conduct.

Subd. 3. "Force" means the infliction, attempted infliction, or threatened infliction by the actor of bodily harm or commission or threat of any other crime by the actor against the complainant or another, which (a) causes the complainant to reasonably believe that the actor has the present ability to execute the threat, and (b) if the actor does not have a significant relationship to the complainant, also causes the complainant to submit.

Subd. 4. "Consent" means a voluntary uncoerced manifestation of a present agreement to perform a particular sexual act.

Subd. 5. "Intimate parts" includes the primary genital area, groin, inner thigh, buttocks, or breast of a human being.

Subd. 6. "Mentally impaired" means that a person, as a result of inadequately developed or impaired intelligence or a substantial psychiatric disorder of thought or mood, lacks the judgment to give a reasoned consent to sexual contact or to sexual penetration.

Subd. 7. "Mentally incapacitated" means that a person is rendered temporarily incapable of appraising or controlling his conduct due to the influence of alcohol, a narcotic, anesthetic, or any other substance administered to that person without his agreement, or due to any other act committed upon that person without his agreement.

Subd. 8. "Personal injury" means bodily harm as defined in section 609.02, subdivision 7, or severe mental anguish or pregnancy.

Subd. 9. "Physically helpless" means that a person is (a) asleep or not conscious, (b) unable to withhold consent or to withdraw because of a physical condition, or (c) unable to communicate nonconsent and the condition is known or reasonably should have been known to the actor.

Subd. 10. "Position of authority" includes but is not limited to any person who is a parent or acting in the place of a parent and

charged with any of a parent's rights, duties or responsibilities to a child, or a person who is charged with any duty or responsibility for the health, welfare, or supervision of a child, either independently or through another, no matter how brief, at the time of the act.

Subd. 11. (a) "Sexual contact", for the purposes of section 609.343, subdivision 1, clauses (a) to (f), and section 609.345, subdivision 1, clauses (a) to (e), and (h) to (j), includes any of the following acts committed without the complainant's consent, for the purpose of satisfying the actor's sexual or aggressive impulses, except in those cases where consent is not a defense:

- (i) the intentional touching by the actor of the complainant's intimate parts, or
- (ii) the touching by the complainant of the actor's, the complainant's, or another's intimate parts effected by coercion or the use of a position of authority, or by inducement if the complainant is under 13 years of age or mentally impaired, or
- (iii) the touching by another of the complainant's intimate parts effected by coercion or the use of a position of authority, or
- (iv) in any of the cases above, touching of the clothing covering the immediate area of the intimate parts.

(b) "Sexual contact," for the purposes of section 609.343, subdivision 1, clauses (g) and (h), and section 609.345, subdivision 1, clauses (f) and (g), includes any of the following acts, if the acts can reasonably be construed as being for the purpose of satisfying the actor's sexual or aggressive impulses:

- (i) the intentional touching by the actor of the complainant's intimate parts;
- (ii) the touching by the complainant of the actor's, the complainant's, or another's intimate parts;
- (iii) the touching by another of the complainant's intimate parts; or
- (iv) in any of the cases listed above, touching of the clothing covering the immediate area of the intimate parts.

Subd. 12. "Sexual penetration" means sexual intercourse, cunnilingus, fellatio, anal intercourse, or any intrusion however slight into the genital or anal openings of the complainant's body or any part of the actor's body or any object used by the actor for this purpose, where the act is committed without the complainant's consent, except in those cases where consent is not a defense. Emission of semen is not necessary.

Subd. 13. "Complainant" means a person alleged to have been subjected to criminal sexual conduct, but need not be the person who signs the complaint.

Subd. 14. "Coercion" means words or circumstances that cause the complainant reasonably to fear that the actor will inflict bodily harm upon, or hold in confinement, the complainant or another.

Subd. 15. "Significant relationship" means a situation in which the actor is:

- (1) the complainant's parent, stepparent, or guardian;
- (2) any of the following persons related to the complainant by blood, marriage, or adoption: brother, sister, stepbrother, step-sister, first cousin, aunt, uncle, nephew, niece, grandparent, great-grandparent, great-uncle, great-aunt; or
- (3) an adult who jointly resides intermittently or regularly in the same dwelling as the complainant and who is not the complainant's spouse.

Subd. 16. "Patient" means a person who seeks or obtains psychotherapeutic services.

Subd. 17. "Psychotherapist" means a physician, psychologist, nurse, chemical dependency counselor, social worker, clergy, or other person, whether or not licensed by the state, who performs or purports to perform psychotherapy.

Subd. 18. "Psychotherapy" means the professional treatment, assessment, or counseling of a mental or emotional illness, symptom, or condition.

Subd. 19. "Emotionally dependent" means that the nature of the patient's or former patient's emotional condition and the nature of the treatment provided by the psychotherapist are such that the psychotherapist knows or has reason to know that the patient or former patient is unable to withhold consent to sexual contact or sexual penetration by the psychotherapist.

Subd. 20. "Therapeutic deception" means a representation by a psychotherapist that sexual contact or sexual penetration by the psychotherapist is consistent with or part of the patient's treatment.

609.34 Criminal sexual conduct in the first degree

Subdivision 1. A person is guilty of criminal sexual conduct in the first degree if he engages in sexual penetration with another person and if any of the following circumstances exists:

(a) the complainant is under 13 years of age and the actor is more than 36 months older than the complainant. Neither mistake as to the complainant's age nor consent to the act by the complainant is a defense;

(b) the complainant is at least 13 but less than 16 years of age and the actor is more than 48 months older than the complainant and in a position of authority over the complainant, and uses this authority to cause the complainant to submit. Neither mistake as to the complainant's age nor consent to the act by the complainant is a defense;

(c) circumstances existing at the time of the act cause the complainant to have a reasonable fear of imminent great bodily harm to the complainant or another;

(d) the actor is armed with a dangerous weapon or any article used or fashioned in a manner to lead the complainant to reasonably believe it to be a dangerous weapon and uses or threatens to use the weapon or article to cause the complainant to submit;

(e) the actor causes personal injury to the complainant, and either of the following circumstances exist:

(i) the actor uses force or coercion to accomplish sexual penetration; or

(ii) the actor knows or has reason to know that the complainant is mentally impaired, mentally incapacitated, or physically helpless;

(f) the actor is aided or abetted by one or more accomplices within the meaning of section 609.05, and either of the following circumstances exist:

(i) an accomplice uses force or coercion to cause the complainant to submit;

(ii) an accomplice is armed with a dangerous weapon or any article used or fashioned in a manner to lead the complainant reasonably to believe it to be a dangerous weapon and uses or threatens to use the weapon or article to cause the complainant to submit;

(g) the actor has a significant relationship to the complainant and the complainant was under 16 years of age at the time of the sexual penetration. Neither mistake as to the complainant's age nor consent to the act by the complainant is a defense; or

(h) the actor has a significant relationship to the complainant, the complainant was under 16 years of age at the time of the sexual penetration, and:

(i) the actor or an accomplice used force or coercion to accomplish the penetration;

(ii) the actor or an accomplice was armed with a dangerous weapon or any article used or fashioned in a manner to lead the complainant to reasonably believe it could be a dangerous weapon and used or threatened to use the dangerous weapon;

(iii) circumstances existed at the time of the act to cause the complainant to have a reasonable fear of imminent great bodily harm to the complainant or another;

(iv) the complainant suffered personal injury; or

(v) the sexual abuse involved multiple acts committed over an extended period of time.

Neither mistake as to the complainant's age nor consent to the act by the complainant is a defense.

Subd. 2. A person convicted under subdivision 1 may be sentenced to imprisonment for not more than 20 years or to a payment of a fine of not more than \$35,000, or both.

Subd. 3. Except when imprisonment is required under section 609.346, if a person is convicted under subdivision 1, clause (g), the court may stay imposition or execution of the sentence if it finds that:

(a) a stay is in the best interest of the complainant or the family unit; and

(b) a professional assessment indicates that the offender has been accepted by and can respond to a treatment program.

If the court stays imposition or execution of sentence, it shall include the following as conditions of probation:

(1) incarceration in a local jail or workhouse; and

(2) a requirement that the offender complete a treatment program.

609.343 Criminal sexual conduct in the second degree

Subdivision 1. A person is guilty of criminal sexual conduct in the second degree if he engages in sexual contact with another person and if any of the following circumstances exist:

(a) the complainant is under 13 years of age and the actor is more than 36 months older than the complainant. Neither mistake as to the complainant's age nor consent to the act by the complainant is a defense. In a prosecution under this clause, the state is not required to prove that the sexual contact was coerced;

(b) the complainant is at least 13 but less than 16 years of age and the actor is more than 48 months older than the complainant and in a position of authority over the complainant, and uses this authority to cause the complainant to submit. Neither mistake as to the complainant's age nor consent to the act by the complainant is a defense;

(c) circumstances existing at the time of the act cause the complainant to have a reasonable fear of imminent great bodily harm to the complainant or another;

(d) the actor is armed with a dangerous weapon or any article used or fashioned in a manner to lead the complainant to reasonably believe it to be a dangerous weapon and uses or threatens to use the dangerous weapon to cause the complainant to submit;

(e) the actor causes personal injury to the complainant, and either of the following circumstances exist:

(i) the actor uses force or coercion to accomplish the sexual contact; or

(ii) the actor knows or has reason to know that the complainant is mentally impaired, mentally incapacitated, or physically helpless;

(f) the actor is aided or abetted by one or more accomplices within the meaning of section 609.05, and either of the following circumstances exists:

(i) an accomplice uses force or coercion to cause the complainant to submit; or

(ii) an accomplice is armed with a dangerous weapon or any article used or fashioned in a manner to lead the complainant to reasonably believe it to be a dangerous weapon and uses or threatens to use the weapon or article to cause the complainant to submit;

(g) the actor has a significant relationship to the complainant and the complainant was under 16 years of age at the time of the sexual contact. Neither mistake as to the complainant's age nor consent to the act by the complainant is a defense; or

(h) the actor has a significant relationship to the complainant, the complainant was under 16 years of age at the time of the sexual contact, and:

(i) the actor or an accomplice used force or coercion to accomplish the contact;

(ii) the actor or an accomplice was armed with a dangerous weapon or any article used or fashioned in a manner to lead the complainant to reasonably believe it could be a dangerous weapon and used or threatened to use the dangerous weapon;

(iii) circumstances existed at the time of the act to cause the complainant to have a reasonable fear of imminent great bodily harm to the complainant or another;

(iv) the complainant suffered personal injury; or

(v) the sexual abuse involved multiple acts committed over an extended period of time.

Neither mistake as to the complainant's age nor consent to the act by the complainant is a defense.

Subd. 2. A person convicted under subdivision 1 may be sentenced to imprisonment for not more than 15 years or to a payment of a fine of not more than \$30,000, or both.

Subd. 3. Except when imprisonment is required under section 609.346, if a person is convicted under subdivision 1, clause (g), the court may stay imposition or execution of the sentence if it finds that:

(a) a stay is in the best interest of the complainant or the family unit; and

(b) a professional assessment indicates that the offender has been accepted by and can respond to a treatment program.

If the court stays imposition or execution of sentence, it shall include the following as conditions of probation:

(1) incarceration in a local jail or workhouse; and

(2) a requirement that the offender complete a treatment program.

609.344 Criminal sexual conduct in the third degree

Subdivision 1. A person is guilty of criminal sexual conduct in the third degree if he engages in sexual penetration with another person and any of the following circumstances exists:

(a) the complainant is under 13 years of age and the actor is no more than 36 months older than the complainant. Neither mistake as to the complainant's age nor consent to the act by the complainant shall be a defense;

(b) the complainant is at least 13 but less than 16 years of age and the actor is more than 24 months older than the complainant. In any such case it shall be an affirmative defense, which must be proved by a preponderance of the evidence, that the actor believes the complainant to be 16 years of age or older. If the actor in such a case is no more than 48 months but more than 24

months older than the complainant, he may be sentenced to imprisonment for not more than five years. Consent by the complainant is not a defense;

(c) the actor uses force or coercion to accomplish the penetration;

(d) the actor knows or has reason to know that the complainant is mentally impaired, mentally incapacitated, or physically helpless;

(e) the complainant is at least 16 but less than 18 years of age and the actor is more than 48 months older than the complainant and in a position of authority over the complainant, and uses this authority to cause the complainant to submit. Neither mistake as to the complainant's age nor consent to the act by the complainant is a defense;

(f) the actor has a significant relationship to the complainant and the complainant was at least 16 but under 18 years of age at the time of the sexual penetration. Neither mistake as to the complainant's age nor consent to the act by the complainant is a defense; or

(g) the actor has a significant relationship to the complainant, the complainant was at least 16 but under 18 years of age at the time of the sexual penetration, and:

(i) the actor or an accomplice used force or coercion to accomplish the penetration;

(ii) the actor or an accomplice was armed with a dangerous weapon or any article used or fashioned in a manner to lead the complainant to reasonably believe it could be a dangerous weapon and used or threatened to use the dangerous weapon;

(iii) circumstances existed at the time of the act to cause the complainant to have a reasonable fear of imminent great bodily harm to the complainant or another;

(iv) the complainant suffered personal injury; or

(v) the sexual abuse involved multiple acts committed over an extended period of time.

Neither mistake as to the complainant's age nor consent to the act by the complainant is a defense.

(h) the actor is a psychotherapist and the complainant is a patient of the psychotherapist and the sexual penetration occurred during the psychotherapy session. Consent by the complainant is not a defense;

(i) the actor is a psychotherapist and the complainant is a patient or former patient of the psychotherapist and the patient or former patient is emotionally dependent upon the psychotherapist; or

(j) the actor is a psychotherapist and the complainant is a patient or former patient and the sexual penetration occurred by means of therapeutic deception. Consent by the complainant is not a defense.

Subd. 2. A person convicted under subdivision 1 may be sentenced to imprisonment for not more than ten years or to a payment of a fine of not more than \$20,000, or both.

Subd. 3. Except when imprisonment is required under section 609.346, if a person is convicted under subdivision 1, clause (f), the court may stay imposition or execution of the sentence if it finds that:

(a) a stay is in the best interest of the complainant or the family unit; and

(b) a professional assessment indicates that the offender has been accepted by and can respond to a treatment program.

If the court stays imposition or execution of sentence, it shall include the following as conditions of probation:

(1) incarceration in a local jail or workhouse; and

(2) a requirement that the offender complete a treatment program.

609.345 Criminal sexual conduct in the fourth degree

Subdivision 1. A person is guilty of criminal sexual conduct in the fourth degree if he engages in sexual contact with another person and if any of the following circumstances exists:

(a) the complainant is under 13 years of age and the actor is no more than 36 months older than the complainant. Neither mistake as to the complainant's age or consent to the act by the complainant is a defense. In a prosecution under this clause, the state is not required to prove that the sexual contact was coerced;

(b) the complainant is at least 13 but less than 16 years of age and the actor is more than 48 months older than the complainant or in a position of authority over the complainant and uses this authority to cause the complainant to submit. In any such case, it shall be an affirmative defense which must be proved by a preponderance of the evidence that the actor believes the complainant to be 16 years of age or older;

(c) the actor uses force or coercion to accomplish the sexual contact;

(d) the actor knows or has reason to know that the complainant is mentally impaired, mentally incapacitated, or physically helpless;

(e) the complainant is at least 16 but less than 18 years of age and the actor is more than 48 months older than the complainant and in a position of authority over the complainant, and uses this authority to cause the complainant to submit. Neither mistake as to the complainant's age nor consent to the act by the complainant is a defense;

(f) the actor has a significant relationship to the complainant and the complainant was at least 16 but under 18 years of age at the time of the sexual contact. Neither mistake as to the complainant's age nor consent to the act by the complainant is a defense; or

(g) the actor has a significant relationship to the complainant, the complainant was at least 16 but under 18 years of age at the time of the sexual contact, and:

(i) the actor or an accomplice used force or coercion to accomplish the contact;

(ii) the actor or an accomplice was armed with a dangerous weapon or any article used or fashioned in a manner to lead the complainant to reasonably believe it could be a dangerous weapon and used or threatened to use the dangerous weapon;

(iii) circumstances existed at the time of the act to cause the complainant to have a reasonable fear of imminent great bodily harm to the complainant or another;

(iv) the complainant suffered personal injury; or

(v) the sexual abuse involved multiple acts committed over an extended period of time.

Neither mistake as to the complainant's age nor consent to the act by the complainant is a defense.

(h) the actor is a psychotherapist and the complainant is a patient of the psychotherapist and the sexual contact occurred during the psychotherapy session. Consent by the complainant is not a defense;

(i) the actor is a psychotherapist and the complainant is a patient or former patient of the psychotherapist and the patient or former patient is emotionally dependent upon the psychotherapist; or

(j) the actor is a psychotherapist and the complainant is a patient or former patient and the sexual contact occurred by means of therapeutic deception. Consent by the complainant is not a defense.

Subd. 2. A person convicted under subdivision 1 may be sentenced to imprisonment for not more than five years or to a payment of a fine of not more than \$10,000, or both.

Subd. 3. Except when imprisonment is required under section 609.346, if a person is convicted under subdivision 1, clause (f), the court may stay imposition or execution of the sentence if it finds that:

(a) a stay is in the best interest of the complainant or the family unit; and

(b) a professional assessment indicates that the offender has been accepted by and can respond to a treatment program.

If the court stays imposition or execution of sentence, it shall include the following as conditions of probation:

(1) incarceration in a local jail or workhouse; and

(2) a requirement that the offender complete a treatment program.

609.346 Subsequent offenses

Subdivision 1. For purposes of this section, the term "offense" means a completed offense or an attempt to commit an offense.

Subd. 2. If a person is convicted of a second or subsequent offense under sections 609.342 to 609.345 within 15 years of the prior conviction, the court shall commit the defendant to the commissioner of corrections for imprisonment for a term of not less than three years, nor more than the maximum sentence provided by law for the offense for which convicted; notwithstanding the provisions of sections 242.19, 243.05, 609.11, 609.12 and 609.135.

Subd. 3. For the purposes of this section, an offense is considered a second or subsequent offense if, prior to conviction of the second or subsequent offense, the actor has been at any time convicted under sections 609.342 to 609.345 or under any similar statute of the United States, or this or any other state.

609.347 Evidence

Subdivision 1. In a prosecution under sections 609.342 to 609.346, the testimony of a complainant need not be corroborated.

Subd. 2. In a prosecution under sections 609.342 to 609.346, there is no need to show that the complainant resisted the actor.

Subd. 3. In a prosecution under sections 609.342 to 609.346, or 609.365, evidence of the complainant's previous sexual conduct shall not be admitted nor shall any reference to such conduct be made in the presence of the jury, except by court order under the procedure provided in subdivision 4, and only to the extent that the court finds that any of the following proposed evidence is material to the fact at issue in the case and that its inflammatory or prejudicial nature does not outweigh its probative value:

(a) When consent or fabrication by the complainant is the defense in the case, evidence of such conduct tending to establish a common scheme or plan of similar sexual conduct under circumstances similar to the case at issue on the part of the complainant, relevant and material to the issue of consent or fabrication. Evidence of such conduct engaged in more than one year prior to the date of alleged offense is inadmissible;

(b) Evidence of specific instances of sexual activity showing the source of semen, pregnancy, or disease at the time of the incident or, in the case of pregnancy, between the time of the incident and trial;

(c) Evidence of the complainant's past sexual conduct with the defendant;

(d) For purposes of impeachment, when such evidence is offered to rebut specific testimony of the complainant.

Subd. 4. The defendant may not offer evidence described in subdivision 3 except pursuant to the following procedure:

(a) A motion shall be made by the defendant prior to trial, unless later for good cause shown, stating to the court and prosecutor that the defendant has an offer of proof of the relevancy of the evidence of the sexual conduct of the complainant which is proposed to be presented;

(b) If the court finds that the offer of proof is sufficient, the court shall order a hearing out of the presence of the jury, if any, and in such hearing shall allow the defendant to make a full presentation of his offer of proof;

(c) At the conclusion of the hearing, if the court finds that the evidence proposed to be offered by the defendant regarding the sexual conduct of the complainant is relevant and material to the fact of consent, and is not so prejudicial as to be inadmissible, the court shall make an order stating the extent to which evidence is admissible under subdivision 3 and prescribing the nature of questions to be permitted at trial. The defendant may then offer evidence pursuant to the order of the court;

(d) If new information is discovered after the date of the hearing or during the course of trial, which may make evidence described in subdivision 3 admissible, the defendant shall make the disclosures under clause (a) of this subdivision and the court shall order an in camera hearing to determine whether the proposed evidence is admissible by the standards herein.

Subd. 5. In a prosecution under sections 609.342 to 609.346, the court shall not instruct the jury to the effect that:

(a) It may be inferred that a complainant who has previously consented to sexual intercourse with persons other than the defendant would be therefore more likely to consent to sexual intercourse again; or

(b) The complainant's previous or subsequent sexual conduct in and of itself may be considered in determining the credibility of the complainant; or

(c) Criminal sexual conduct is a crime easily charged by a complainant but very difficult to disprove by a defendant because of the heinous nature of the crime; or

(d) The jury should scrutinize the testimony of the complainant any more closely than it should scrutinize the testimony of any witness in any felony prosecution.

Subd. 6. (a) In a prosecution under sections 609.342 to 609.346 involving a psychotherapist and patient, evidence of the patient's personal or medical history is not admissible except when:

(1) the defendant requests a hearing prior to trial and makes an offer of proof of the relevancy of the history; and

(2) the court finds that the history is relevant and that the probative value of the history outweighs its prejudicial value.

(b) The court shall allow the admission only of specific information or examples of conduct of the complainant that are determined by the court to be relevant. The court's order shall detail the information or conduct that is admissible and no other evidence of the history may be introduced.

(c) Violation of the terms of the order is grounds for mistrial but does not prevent the retrial of the defendant.

609.3471 Records pertaining to victim identity confidential

Notwithstanding any provision of law to the contrary, no data contained in records or reports relating to complaints or indict-

ments issued pursuant to sections 609.342, clause (a), (b), (g), or (h); 609.343, clause (a), (b), (g), or (h); 609.344, clause (a), (b), (e), (f), or (g); or 609.345, clause (a), (b), (e), (f), or (g); which specifically identifies the victim shall be accessible to the public, except by order of the court. Nothing in this section authorizes denial of access to any other data contained in the records or reports, including the identity of the defendant.

609.348 Medical purposes; exclusion

Sections 609.342 to 609.346 shall not apply to sexual penetration or sexual contact when done for a bona fide medical purpose.

609.349 Voluntary relationships

A person does not commit criminal sexual conduct under sections 609.342, clauses (a) and (b), 609.343, clauses (a) and (b), 609.344, clauses (a), (b), (d), and (e), and 609.345, clauses (a), (b), (d), and (e), if the actor and complainant were adults cohabiting in an ongoing voluntary sexual relationship at the time of the alleged offense, or if the complainant is the actor's legal spouse, unless the couple is living apart and one of them has filed for legal separation or dissolution of the marriage. Nothing in this section shall be construed to prohibit or restrain the prosecution for any other offense committed by any person against his legal spouse.

609.35 Costs of medical examination

No costs incurred by a county, city, or private hospital or other emergency medical facility or by a private physician for the examination of a complainant of criminal sexual conduct, when the examination is performed for the purpose of gathering evidence for possible prosecution, shall be charged directly or indirectly to the complainant. The reasonable costs of such examination shall be paid by the county in which the alleged offense was committed. Nothing in this section shall be construed to limit the duties, responsibilities, or liabilities of any insurer, whether public or private.

609.352 Solicitation of Children to Engage in Sexual Conduct

Subdivision 1. As used in this section:

(a) "child" means a person under the age of 15 years;

(b) "sexual conduct" means sexual contact of the individual's primary genital area, sexual penetration as defined in section 609.341, or sexual performance as defined in section 617.246; and

(c) "solicit" means commanding, entreating, or attempting to persuade a specific person.

Subd. 2. A person 18 years of age or older who solicits a child to engage in sexual conduct with intent to engage in sexual conduct is guilty of a felony and may be sentenced to imprisonment for not more than three years, or to payment of a fine of not more than \$5,000, or both.

Subd. 3. Mistake as to age is not a defense to a prosecution under this section.

APPENDIX FOUR-B

The Minnesota Crime Victims Reparations Law (Minnesota Statutes 611A.52 – 611A.56)

Purpose

To provide victims of crime with compensation for loss of earning or support and out-of-pocket loss for injuries sustained as a direct result of a crime committed against their person. Out-of-pocket loss means reasonable medical care or other services necessary as a result of injury. In the event of the death of the victim, reasonable medical care plus reasonable expenses incurred by a legal representative of deceased for funeral, burial or cremation, and for some substitute services.

How much can a victim recover?

Up to a maximum of \$50,000. There is a \$100 minimum claim, and deductions for amounts received or to be received as a result of the injury:

- (a) From or on behalf of the offender.
- (b) Under insurance programs of any kind — Blue Cross/Blue Shield, Group Health, Workmen's Compensation, loss of wage insurance, etc. (except life insurance contracts).
- (c) From public (city, county, state, or federal) funds.
- (d) From any private source as a voluntary gift or donation.

Who is eligible?

A person who suffers personal injury as a direct result of a crime, a good faith effort to prevent a crime, or a good faith effort to apprehend a person suspected of engaging in a crime. Also eligible is a dependent or legal representative of a victim who has died as a result of a crime.

What must a victim do to be eligible for reparations?

1. Must report crime to law enforcement agency where crime was committed within five days of the event. If crime could not be reasonably reported within five days of its occurrence, then within five days of the time when a report could reasonably have been made. This requirement does not apply to victims of sexual assault or to crimes committed against children.
2. Must cooperate with the law enforcement agency & prosecutor where applicable.
3. Must be an *innocent* victim of crime, i.e., not the offender or an accomplice to the offender.
4. Must file a Claim Form with Crime Victims Reparations Board within *one year* of the happening of the event. If a claim could not have been made within that period, then the claim can be made within one year of the time when a claim could have been made.
5. The time limits for reporting and filing a claim do not apply to victims of domestic child abuse. Domestic child abuse includes family sexual abuse. Such claims must be submitted within one year of the report to the police.

Victims of sexual assault may receive reparations for:

Economic loss which means actual economic detriment incurred as a direct result of injury or death:

- (a) Injury means actual bodily harm including pregnancy and mental or nervous disorders, including post-traumatic stress syndrome. In the case of injury the term is limited to:
 - (i) Reasonable expenses incurred for necessary medical, chiropractic, hospital, rehabilitative, and dental products, services, or accommodations including ambulance services, drugs, appliances, and prosthetic devices.
 - (ii) Reasonable expenses incurred for psychological or psychiatric products, services or accommodations where the nature of the injury or the circumstances of the crime are such that the treatment is necessary to the rehabilitation of the victim (treatment plans must be submitted in some cases).
 - (iii) Loss of income the victim would have earned had he not been injured.
 - (iv) Reasonable expenses incurred for substitute child care or household services to replace those the victim would have performed had he/she not been injured.
 - (v) Mileage reimbursement to and from medical care providers.
- (b) In the case of death the term is limited to:
 - (i) Reasonable expenses incurred for funeral, burial, or cremation, up to \$2500.00.
 - (ii) Reasonable expenses for medical, chiropractic, hospital, rehabilitative, psychological and psychiatric services, products or accommodations which were incurred prior to the victim's death and for which the victim's survivors or estate are liable.
 - (iii) Loss of support, including contributions of money, products or goods, but excluding services which the victim would have supplied to his/her dependents if he/she had lived.
 - (iv) Reasonable expenses incurred for substitute child care and household services to replace those which the victim would have performed for the benefit of his/her dependents if he/she had lived.

To recover reparations:

File a Preliminary Claim Form with the Victim's Reparations Board. Forms can be obtained from your local law enforcement agency or by writing to the Crime Victims Reparations Board, N465 Griggs-Midway Bldg., 1821 University Ave., St. Paul, Minnesota 55104 or calling (612) 642-0395.

CHAPTER FIVE

THE CHILD AS VICTIM

CHAPTER FIVE

THE CHILD AS VICTIM

I. Definitions of Child Sexual Abuse.	111
II. Incidence.	112
III. Common Misconceptions About Child Sexual Abuse.	114
IV. Laws Relating to Child Sexual Abuse.	116
V. Behavioral Cues for Child Sexual Abuse.	116
A. Cues in Younger Children.	116
B. Cues in Older Children.	116
C. Physical Cues.	117
D. Cues in Father — Daughter Incest.	117
E. Cues in Brother — Sister Incest.	117
VI. Protocols for Assisting Child Victims.	117
VII. Police Interview of the Child Sexual Abuse Victim.	117
A. Psychological Reactions.	118
1. Parents.	118
2. Child.	119
B. Before the Interview.	120
C. The Interview.	120
1. Timing.	120
2. Setting.	120
3. Recording the Interview.	121
4. Parents as Observers.	121
5. Rapport.	121
6. Obtaining the Statement.	122
7. Witness Evaluation.	122
D. Ending the Interview.	123
E. Other Witnesses.	123
F. Preparing the Child for Court.	124

VIII. Medical Examination of Children Following Sexual Assault	124
A. General Guidelines	124
B. Objectives of the Medical Evaluation	124
C. Concerns Regarding the Child Victim	125
D. Concerns Regarding the Parents and Extended Family	125
E. History	126
F. Physical Examination	127
G. Forensic Laboratory Determinations	128
1. Documentation of Presence of Semen	128
2. Documentation of Sexually Transmitted Diseases	129
3. Pregnancy Concerns & Prophylaxis	130
H. Reporting Requirements	130
IX. Support Counseling for Child Sexual Abuse Victims & their Families	130
X. What to Do If a Child Tells You About Sexual Abuse	132
XI. Reporting Child Sexual Abuse	133
A. General Rules for Reporting Sexual Abuse	133
B. Who Must Report	134
C. What Must be Reported	134
D. When Must the Report Be Made	135
E. Who Should Receive the Report	135
F. How Must the Report Be Made	135
G. How the Law Protects the Reporter	136
H. Consequences for Not Reporting	136
I. Action After the Report is Received	136
Appendix	
Child Abuse Reporting Law	139
(Minnesota Statutes 626.556)	

THE CHILD AS A VICTIM

I. DEFINITIONS OF CHILD SEXUAL ABUSE

In the broad sense of the term, child sexual abuse involves both contact and non-contact sexual experiences in which a child is forced, tricked or coerced into participation by an older child or adult.

Sexual abuse outside the family may involve a wide range of contact and non-contact experiences. It may involve touching a child's genitals, breasts or anus with hands, mouth or genitals, with or without clothes on. It may also involve requests of the child to touch someone else's genitals, breasts or anus. Sexual contact may range from fondling to full penetration of a child's vagina, mouth or anus. Non-contact sexual abuse includes forcing a child to look at the genitals of an older child or adult, requesting the child to expose her/himself, or the taking of pornographic photos of the child.

Children who have been sexually abused may react much as they would to any other scary or upsetting experience. Children are likely to take their cue from the adults around them. If parents remain calm and supportive, the child is more likely to experience less disruption due to the incident(s).

The impact of sexual abuse on the victim depends on several factors including 1) whether force or threat of force was used, 2) duration of the abuse (i.e. whether one or many times), 3) extent of the abuse (i.e. whether penetration occurred), 4) whether the perpetrator was well known to the victim, and 5) the individual child's make-up and coping skills. Each child is unique in his/her responses to the abuse. Some common feelings children have are

- * guilt
- * shame
- * fear
- * anger
- * helplessness

Many children need professional therapy after the abuse. In other cases, parents may want to keep the possibility of counseling in mind if the child shows symptoms of upset in the future. Parents who are uncertain if their child needs therapy may want to contact a professional who specializes in child sexual abuse for an evaluation.

Family sexual abuse, or Incest, is the involvement of a child or adolescent in sexual activity by another family member, especially a parent (including step-parent or other adult acting in a parental role), brother or sister. The terms incest and family sexual abuse are often used interchangeably to emphasize that the misuse of authority and trust in sexually exploiting a child has the impact of incest regardless of the specific relationship to the caretaker or the form of the sexual activity.

Children need and have a right to a childhood and adolescence free of physical violence or sexual intrusion from the adults in their lives. Sexual abuse, i.e., the involvement of children by adults in sexual activity, is harmful. It is exploitive and deeply disruptive of the normal developmental tasks of childhood and adolescence. Children have the right to expect a home that is safe and a family that does not betray the child's trust.

The fact that sexual abuse occurs within the family unit alters the impact upon the child and the type of intervention the community should provide. The impact of family

sexual abuse upon the child is usually more complicated and far reaching than the impact of other sexual misconduct involving children. Obviously, services should be directed not only to the victim, but also to the dysfunctional family system in which the abuse occurred. This should not, however, cloud our understanding of the essential nature of the abusive behavior itself. Family sexual abuse is behavior that is defined as criminal sexual conduct. Beyond the dysfunctional family system there is the individual pathology of the abusive adult, whose behavior is criminal. This view has significant implications, both for legal action and in the focus of treatment efforts with family members.

The need to grow up in a stable family unit is a universal need and right of children. In abusive families, there is often a conflict between a child's need for protection and his/her need and desire to remain with the family. This conflict is often felt most painfully by the victim and may retard or complicate the child's efforts to seek help. However, sexual abuse within the family unit is a serious failure of family responsibility to provide for the physical well-being, growth, and development of its members, particularly children. Children sexually abused within the family are particularly vulnerable to upsetting and confusing feelings. They often feel responsible for the abuse and may not be able to separate affection from sex. Incest may have an impact on the child's ability to develop a sense of

- * self esteem
- * trust
- * autonomy
- * right and wrong
- * sex-role identification
- * overall identity

In Minnesota the child abuse reporting law (MS 625.556) requires that both social services and law enforcement agencies be involved in investigating suspected cases of child abuse, including family sexual abuse. Communities at the local level (e.g., county) decide upon particular methods of intervention, prosecution and treatment. The quality and effectiveness of these services depend to a large extent upon the qualifications and resources of the social services and law enforcement staff who handle such cases. Some counties regularly involve the services of private mental health agencies or create a team made up of staff from a number of agencies, to provide long-term treatment to abusive families.

II. INCIDENCE

Numerous studies indicate that one girl out of every four and at least one in ten boys in the United States will be sexually abused in some way before the age of 18. Many professionals in the field believe that the actual incidence for boys is as high as for girls. While the majority of the victims of family sexual abuse are female, most of the victims of pedophiles are pre-adolescent males, although a large number of females are abused also (Martin, 1982).

It is often assumed that the assailant will be a mysterious stranger, but according to several surveys, only 15-25% of all sexual molestations are committed by strangers. Few assaults take place in cars or abandoned buildings. In the vast majority of cases, the victim knows the assailant, often quite well. In fact, the molestation frequently takes place in the victim's own home.

Molestations by a stranger are generally one-time occurrences, but in the case of incest or sexual abuse by a known assailant, the victim may be trapped in a relationship for

years. And while the guilt and shock of a sexual encounter with a stranger are often defused by supportive parental reaction, the family of a child sexually abused by an acquaintance often fails to intervene on the victim's behalf.

Sexual abuse occurs in families of every social, economic, and ethnic background and runs the gamut from fondling to fellatio, cunnilingus, sodomy, and full intercourse. Little children as young as four or five may be shown pornographic pictures in magazines, forced to pose nude in seductive poses or forced to engage in genital fondling or oral sex. The average age of sexual abuse victims is 11 years and victims have been as young as two months.

Since sexual abuse often begins before a child understands its significance, overt force is rarely involved. The perpetrator uses a position of authority or trust to convince the child that their relationship is "for his/her own good," or a normal part of growing up. According to several psychiatrists, when the victim learns the truth, the victim may feel both betrayed by the offender, and guilty and ashamed about his/her own cooperation. At this point, the victim may resist the relationship, only to be frightened with stronger and stronger threats; but his/her own sense of complicity may prevent the victim from asking anyone else for help.

Even when help is sought, the family may close its eyes to the charge out of a sense of loyalty to the offender, the fear of public embarrassment, or perhaps the loss of a parent's income. A mother may not want to believe her husband capable of such atrocious behavior, or she may simply feel powerless to do anything about it. Sometimes mothers are afraid of being beaten or of their family being broken up or of the loss of financial support. Often it's a vague fear of not knowing what to do, where to go, what's going to happen. Sometimes the victim is actually blamed.

Some experts have found a correlation between sexual abuse and later anti-social behavior. A significant proportion of adolescent runaways are children trying to escape from sexually abusive relationships. When physical escape proves impossible, they may embark on long careers of drug abuse or other forms of self-destructive behavior. One family therapist in Minneapolis who has treated more than 500 cases of adolescent drug addiction, reported that some 70 percent of his clients were caught in some form of family sexual abuse. The same is true of 44 percent of the female population at one residential drug treatment program with centers in seven states. Out of all the child sexual abusive cases they treated, only 4% had ever been reported to the authorities (Ms. Magazine, 1977).

Up until very recently, child sexual abuse has remained one of the least reported categories of criminal activity. For every incest case reported to authorities, as many as another 25 may have remained hidden. (Geiser, 1979).

On the average, sexual abuse reports are not made until the victim tells someone, or becomes pregnant. Often, the victim has been removed from the home following disclosure and placed in protective custody or a foster home, a procedure which unfortunately reinforces the conviction that he/she is the offending party. The victim may be asked to repeat the embarrassing details of the abuse to the police investigators, protective service workers, the district attorney, and, if qualified as a witness, to the defense attorney under cross-examination in open court.

Society's attitudes are slowly changing. This has been reflected in new legislation to protect children from sexual abuse. In Minnesota, people who work with children or are responsible for children in a professional capacity must report any suspected abuse (see Section XI, Reporting Child Sexual Abuse). In 1981, the Intrafamilial Sexual Abuse law was passed by the Minnesota legislature, and later incorporated into the Criminal Sexual

Conduct Law. This law provides for criminal penalties against an adult member of a family who sexually abuses a minor (under age 18) in that family. Social service and law enforcement agencies are making efforts to keep the victim at home and remove the perpetrator whenever possible.

The magnitude of the problem of child sexual abuse is perhaps only matched by the degree of secrecy which surrounds it. As more assistance becomes available, more of the hidden victims are reaching out for help. The taboo against family sex and other forms of child sexual abuse, far from preventing it, only keeps us from recognizing and treating those who violate it. If society is going to help the victim of sexual abuse, it is going to have to become less terrified of it. Only then will we be able to effectively intervene to stop the abuse.

III. COMMON MISCONCEPTIONS ABOUT CHILD SEXUAL ABUSE

Myth 1: Children are most likely to be sexually assaulted by a stranger.

Fact: 75%–95% of offenders are known — and may be related — to the child.

Myth 2: Children lie or fantasize about sexual activities with adults.

Fact: Developmentally, young children cannot make up explicit sexual information unless they have been exposed to it. They speak from their own experiences. Sometimes a parent will try to get a child to falsely report sexual abuse. Primary indicators of such a report are the child's inability to explicitly describe or illustrate the act, or a grossly inconsistent account.

Myth 3: The sexual abuse of a child is an isolated, one time incident.

Fact: Child sexual abuse is usually a situation that develops gradually over a period of time and the sexual abuse occurs repeatedly.

Myth 4: It is not important for children to have information about sexual assault. Talking to children about it will only scare them.

Fact: It is just as important for children to receive information about sexual assault for their own safety as it is for them to receive information about fires, crossing the street and swimming. Inaccurate information is more frightening and damaging to children.

Myth 5: Nonviolent sexual behavior between a child and adult is not emotionally damaging to the child.

Fact: Although child sexual abuse may involve subtle rather than extreme force, nearly all victims will experience confusion, shame, guilt, anger and a lowered self image, though they may reveal no obvious outward signs.

Myth 6: Child molesters are all dirty old men.

Fact: In a recent study of convicted child molesters, 80% were found to have committed their first offense before the age of 30.

- Myth 7: Just as many adult women abuse young boys as adult men exploit young girls.
- Fact: While there are women offenders, most reported cases of child sexual abuse involve adult men and young girls. When young boys are exploited, they are usually the victims of adult men. Research indicates that over 90% of offenders are male.
- Myth 8: The lower the family income and social status, the higher the likelihood of the sexual abuse of children.
- Fact: There is no data to support this conclusion. It is safe to assume, however, that the lower the income and social status, the higher the likelihood of the abuse being reported to a public agency.
- Myth 9: Multiple sexual abuse (such as father abusing two or more daughters) is extremely rare.
- Fact: If there are two or more daughters in the home, without discovery or intervention, a sexually abusive father will usually be involved with each of them. It is rare for a father to be sexually abusing only one daughter if there are several in the family. Sons may also be victimized.
- Myth 10: Any parent who would sexually abuse their child has to be mentally ill.
- Fact: The vast majority of abusers are not mentally ill and most hold jobs, function well in the community and are well respected by their peers. Most abusers deny the event and some claim seduction by the child.
- Myth 11: Family sexual abuse is easy to treat, once it becomes known.
- Fact: Sexual abuse is extremely difficult to treat because it involves different people moving at different speeds (father, mother, child, other siblings). Often none of them may be ready for treatment.
- Myth 12: In father-daughter sexual involvement, the mother is unaware of sexual abuse occurring in the home.
- Fact: In some cases, the mother may have good grounds to suspect abuse and may contribute to and perpetuate the situation. In fact, upon open discovery the mother may even insist that the daughter be removed from the home. It is important to recognize, however, that this does not apply to *all* mothers of incest victims. Because of their lack of awareness, many may suspect something is wrong but are unclear as to what it is, or what to do.
- Myth 13: Children provoke sexual abuse by their seductive behavior.
- Fact: Seductive behavior may be the result, but never the cause, of sexual abuse. The responsibility lies with the adult offender.
- Myth 14: If the children did not want it, they could say, "stop."
- Fact: Children generally do not question the behavior of adults. They are often coerced by bribes, threats and use of a position of authority.

IV. LAWS RELATING TO CHILD SEXUAL ABUSE

Three laws apply directly to sexual abuse of children:

- **Reporting Of Maltreatment Of Minors**

Anyone who works with children in a professional capacity must report whenever they know or have reason to believe a child is being neglected or physically or sexually abused. See later sections of this chapter.

- **Incest Law**

Anyone having sexual intercourse with someone who is more closely related than first cousin is guilty of incest. The law stipulates no age limit.

- **The Criminal Sexual Conduct Law**

The law is complex. However, any person who has had sexual intercourse with a child under the age of 16 and who is at least two years older than the child is guilty of criminal sexual conduct. Similarly, any person who has had intimate sexual contact with a child under the age of 16 and who is at least four years older than the child is guilty of criminal sexual conduct. See Chapter 4 for additional information.

The Criminal Sexual Conduct Law also includes sections on sexual contact or penetration by persons with a significant (e.g., familial) relationship with a child under the age of 18. The offender may be related to the victim by blood, marriage, adoption; may be a parent, guardian or someone responsible for the child's care; or may be any adult who resides in the same household as the victim either regularly or intermittently. The court has discretion to stay execution of the sentence if it is deemed in the best interest of the family, and may require the abusing party to participate in treatment or counseling. Consent is not an issue. See Appendix 4-A for additional information.

V. BEHAVIORAL CUES FOR CHILD SEXUAL ABUSE

Children often exhibit cues in their behavior that indicate emotional upset. The possibility of sexual abuse should be explored when a child exhibits these behaviors. Parents of a child who has been assaulted should be told about these signs to watch for as an indication that the child may need professional help.

A. *Cues in Younger Children*

- change in sleeping habits (sleeps more, or less; nightmares)
- change in eating habits (eats more, or less)
- develops new fears (afraid of the dark, or afraid of being alone)
- starts bedwetting, or encopresis (fecal soiling)
- becomes irritable and fussy
- becomes hyperactive
- becomes quiet or withdrawn
- overly compulsive behavior
- compulsive masturbation; precocious sex play; excessive curiosity about sex
- learning problems
- regression in developmental milestones
- seductive behavior
- clinging/whining to a particular parent
- explicit knowledge of sexual acts, especially attempts to perform them

B. *Cues in Older Children*

- depression
- withdrawal (few friends, isolation from peers, overly restricted social activities)
- suicide attempts
- drug/alcohol abuse
- chronic runaway
- increase in physical complaints (headaches, stomachaches)
- poor self-image, reflected in choice of clothing, overall appearance, cleanliness
- truancy
- drop in academic performance
- promiscuity or prostitution
- repeated rape victim
- overly seductive

C. *Physical Cues*

- pregnancy
- venereal disease
- genital infection, lacerations, abrasions, bleeding, discharge
- chronic stomachache, headache; increase in physical complaints
- painful discharge of urine

D. *Cues in Father-Daughter Incest*

- blurring of generational lines; father takes "child" position, mother takes "child" position; daughter takes over role of "mother" and "wife"; father acts as suitor to daughter; mother acts as rival to daughter
- father jealous of or severely limits daughter's peer relationships or dating behavior
- father over-possessive of daughter
- father often alone with daughter
- father shows favoritism toward daughter over other children in the family
- siblings jealous of daughter; may reject or gang-up on her
- daughter exhibits other signs of emotional upset, e.g., attempts suicide, runs away, depressed, promiscuous, etc.

E. *Cues in Brother-Sister Incest*

- brother and sister act like boyfriend and girlfriend
- sister fearful of being alone with brother
- brother and sister embarrassed when found alone together
- sister antagonizing to brother; brother does not retaliate

VI. PROTOCOLS FOR ASSISTING CHILD VICTIMS

Because the needs of the child victim of sexual abuse are so uniquely different from those of the adult victim, special procedures for working with child victims need to be developed by police, hospital, legal and social service agencies. Developing a comprehensive recommended protocol for working with the child as victim is a major effort in itself and is beyond the scope of this manual. Therefore, the information provided in the following sections is a compilation of materials available relative to the sexual abuse of children, but is in no way intended to be a complete protocol.

VII. THE POLICE INTERVIEW OF THE CHILD SEXUAL ABUSE VICTIM*

In interviewing a child sex victim, the police officer must establish the elements of the offense without causing the victim, who is likely to be confused and frightened, unnecessary anguish. Frequently, the emotional reactions of the parents and problems of communication between the officer and the child complicate the interview process. Throughout the interview, the police officer should exercise tact, compassion, and patience, and avoid negatively labelling the incident, keeping the welfare of the child first in mind.

Although many thousands of American children are sexually abused each year, very few of these cases are brought to the attention of the police. The primary reason that child sexual abuse is a vastly underreported crime is that frequently the victim and the offender are related. Family members may not report such sex crimes because of personal shame, misguided loyalty, fear of public exposure and embarrassment, or outright complicity. The child may not relate the abuse to anyone because the child is naively obedient, fears retaliation, does not want to hurt the family, or is unaware that an offense has been committed.

Because of these factors, a great majority of incidents involving family members do not surface rapidly, if at all. Often, such cases of abuse represent long periods of chronic adult-child sexual activity, in which the child maintains genuine affection for the offender although having negative feelings about the sex acts. Some children may be active participants in sexual relations because of their need and desire for adult or parental affection and attention. The sexual abuse may be their only source of nurturance.

Child assaults committed by strangers are much more likely to be reported to the police. But even here, underreporting is prevalent because children often have difficulty in understanding and relating unusual experiences. Since the assault complaint is typically registered by the parents, they must first understand and believe the child's account.

Underreporting is not the only obstacle that the police face in dealing with child sexual abuse victims. Even when such assaults are reported, there frequently is a substantial time lag between the occurrence of the incident and the notification of the police. Many a parent does not learn about the attack immediately because the child "forgets" to mention it. The victim may not think to mention the incident until something triggers a memory of it. For example, while being bathed, a young girl may remember the assault and tell her mother that someone had kissed or touched her. Police officers need to realize that a late report is often caused by the child's limitations in remembering and communicating experience. On the other hand, the longer the time period between the attack and the official reporting of it, the more difficult it is to investigate the case.

After the abuse has been reported, police involvement in the case usually begins with the interview of the child. Interviewing a child is different from interviewing an adult, where both the officer and the victim are at least assured of "speaking the same language." The officer has to use special skills in conducting a successful interview of a child sexual abuse victim. The officer needs to have an insight into how children perceive and relate events, and must have some understanding of the psychological reactions of the child and the parents to the incident.

*Adapted from Training Key #224 with the permission of the International Association of Chiefs of Police.

A. *Psychological Reactions*

In cases of child sexual abuse, the police officer must consider carefully the emotional condition of the victim and the victim's parents. An understanding of the various psychological reactions of the parents and child helps the officer to avoid causing unnecessary anguish and creates an atmosphere of trust and support, in which the investigative process, especially the initial interview, can proceed smoothly.

1. *Parents.* Child molestation is an offense where the emotions of the parents or guardians may be more complex and explosive than the psychological reactions of the victim. Because the child's emotional condition and attitude toward the police will likely reflect the parents' state, it is often necessary for the officer to consider the parents' reaction, if they are not involved in the offense, before concentrating on the victim.

Although parental reactions vary, there are typical emotional conditions for which the police officer can be prepared. Perhaps most common is the grief reaction, a combination of fear, anger, and sorrow. Here, the police officer should allow the parents to express or "ventilate" their feelings away from the child's hearing. After they have relieved some of their emotional tension, the officer should try to further calm the parents, assuring them that the child is safe and everything during the investigation will be carried out in the child's best interest.

Parents of child sexual abuse victims frequently experience feelings of extreme guilt. They blame themselves for "allowing" the assault to occur. Such expressions of guilt generally start with the word if — "if only I had moved to another neighborhood" or "if only I hadn't gone to the store." Where appropriate, the police officer should assure them that they have been responsible parents and that the only guilty party is the offender.

Sometimes the parents' guilt will be directed toward the child in the form of verbal abuse. The parents will blame the child for the misfortune. When this occurs, the police officer should separate the child from the parents and explain to them that their behavior will adversely affect the child's present condition and future recovery. Explanations such as these should be delivered tactfully, for the success of the interview and the well-being of the victim depend greatly on the rapport established between the police and the parents.

If one parent is the offender and the other parent's guilt is justified — for example, when a mother has known for some time about relations between her husband and daughter — the officer should acknowledge the mother's feelings but not criticize her behavior. Antagonizing the mother will only make interviewing the child a more difficult task.

2. *Child.* Many factors influence the emotional reactions that child sexual abuse victims experience. The age, level of physical and emotional development, understanding of sex, family stability, brutality of the attack, and the relationship between the victim and the offender must be taken into account, especially when trying to speculate about the long-range impact of the incident on the child's emotional health. The immediate goal of the police officer, however, is to calm and protect the victim from further emotional damage while carrying out the investigative interview.

The child may exhibit fear, embarrassment, guilt, or confusion. Emotional shock, manifested by crying, shaking, and restlessness, is a reaction that police officers frequently encounter. In such cases, the officer and the parents must comfort and reassure the child until a sense of well-being is restored.

Withdrawal is another common psychological reaction in these situations. The child may refuse to converse with the officer or to become involved in the interview in any other way. Embarrassment, a desire to forget the incident, fear of being arrested, or unfamiliarity with the interview surroundings and procedures may be at the root of this feeling. Patience and understanding on the part of the police officer will help the victim overcome these inhibiting fears.

When the offender is a family member or brutality is involved, the child may "repress" the incident and not be emotionally capable of discussing it. Repression is sometimes called "active forgetting" in that individuals will not allow themselves to remember unpleasant experiences. All that the police officer can do in this situation is to make the victim feel comfortable and secure and explain the importance of the interview in the hope that the victim will respond positively.

Particularly among older children, there may be guilt feelings associated with the assault. The child may feel that the attack was provoked by his/her behavior. The guilt association may be quite childish: for example, the victim accepted candy or a ride home from a stranger and then was "punished" for doing what the parents constantly warned the child not to do. Or the victim's guilt may take a more adult form, such as wondering whether the child's own sexuality somehow enticed the offender or if he/she was a bad person who "deserved" what happened. In any case, the police officer must make it completely clear that the child was not at fault and should not in any way feel responsible for what occurred.

Younger children may be genuinely confused about the attack. The victim may know that something unusual occurred but not that something "bad" or significant took place. Here, the police officer should try to get the facts of the case without alerting the child to the seriousness of the attack by use of labels or tone of voice. So long as the child looks upon the incident as only an "unusual" event, the chances of a complete emotional recovery are very good.

B. Before the Interview

According to Minnesota law, when a child sexual abuse case is reported, either to social services or the police or sheriff's department, the agency receiving the report must notify the other agency (law enforcement or social services) of the report. Where it is believed that police involvement is needed, the social worker and police officer should meet to discuss both the alleged cause of the abuse and the procedures that will be used to make contact with the victim and the victim's family unit prior to their intervention. The interview is often conducted in the presence of a social worker. If the social worker is not in the room, he or she should be at least available nearby for consultation during the interview.

C. The Interview

The interview of any victim of a sex crime is demanding work. The interviewing officer must obtain information from a victim who typically finds it difficult and unpleasant to recount the personal aspects of the crime. If the police officer does not

exercise tact and compassion, not only does the interview fail as an investigative process, but also the victim may unnecessarily suffer emotionally.

1. *Timing.* The interview should take place as soon as possible after the incident is reported. The longer the time interval between the assault and the interview, the less able the child is to recall the attack and relate the details. The welfare of the child cannot, however, be sacrificed for investigative expediency. Since extensive questioning by more than one officer can cause the victim emotional trauma, it should be avoided when possible. Detailed questioning by the officer responsible for the initial interview is, however, necessary to establish whether a crime was committed and to obtain the identity or description of the suspect. The following procedures should, therefore, be applied during both the preliminary and in-depth interviews.
2. *Setting.* The in-depth interview of the victim should not take place until after the child has been medically examined and treated and other physical needs have been met. Personal needs often include washing and changing clothing.

The interview should take place in a comfortable setting where the child feels secure. The setting should provide privacy. Places that are not free from interruptions, distraction, and noise are inappropriate for effective interviewing. When using an office, the officer should ensure that it meets basic requirements of the interview setting, and should permit the child to become familiar with it before starting the interview.

3. *Recording the Interview.* Police interviews with a victim may be recorded through audio tape, video tape, or written record. Minnesota Counties have been mandated to develop guidelines for recording interviews, and officers should consult with the county attorney to determine local guidelines. Once an audio or video tape recorder has been started, it should not be turned off during the interviewing process. An audio or video tape recording of all interviews is not required, but such recordings may be made at the option of the police officer, social worker, or child protection worker. If they are made, they should be made known to the County Attorney and should be preserved. The following information is suggested as the minimum necessary for any record of an interview: the time and place of the interview, the names of all persons present, and a brief summation of the statements of the victim.

Some law enforcement agencies now require that a tape recorded statement of the victim be included with the case file when a case is presented for charging. This tape recording is made by the investigating police officer in question/answer form, and transcribed. It is vital that it be conducted in as nonleading manner as possible. If a tape recorded statement of the victim has not been made, the officer must document in the report what efforts were made to take such a statement and why one was not obtained.

4. *Parents as Observers.* Whenever possible, it is usually most productive to interview the child without either parent being present. In these cases the child will often be hesitant to discuss the attack if family members participate in or observe the interview.

Where a parent is not the perpetrator, the police officer should explain to the child's parents the purpose and structure of the questioning before the interview begins. The officer's attitude must convey a sympathetic understanding of the parents' position, and their cooperation should be openly solicited. Experience has

shown that a child's initial reaction to an interview is influenced greatly by the attitude of the parents. When the parents feel secure and display cooperativeness, the child will likely behave the same way.

Whether the parents should be present during the interview also depends on the specific circumstances of the case. Some children will be frightened and uncommunicative if their parents are not present; others will be reluctant to discuss the matter in front of their family. Generally, if the child requests that the parents be present, the wish should be complied with. The parents can be seated behind the child so that they do not interfere with the questioning. When the child does not want the parents present, they may be seated outside the room where they can observe but not overhear the victim. An interview room equipped with a two-way mirror can fulfill this requirement. In all cases, the interviewing officer will have to judge what arrangement is best, keeping the welfare of the victim uppermost in mind.

5. *Rapport.* One of the most important elements of the interview is the officer's ability to establish a rapport with the victim. An effective means of accomplishing this is for the officer to question the child about him/herself. Most children like to talk about themselves. Questions concerning the child's hobbies, school friends, and activities will show the child that the officer is interested in him/her as a person. In this way, an informal and friendly relationship between the two can be developed, and, in addition, the child will become accustomed to answering personal questions. Once rapport is established, the officer should be able to smoothly lead into discussion of the assault.
6. *Obtaining the Statement.* As when interviewing an adult victim, the police officer should let the child describe the incident in his/her own words and should not ask detailed questions until the victim's statement is complete. The officer should listen attentively and encourage conversation with supporting gestures and comments. By nodding, the officer lets the child know that he/she is listening and understands what is being said. Another way to encourage conversation is to repeat key words and the last word or statement that the child has made. Expressions such as "you feel that," "you are saying that," and "what you are trying to tell me" also help to draw out information.

However, the officer must be careful not to ask leading questions of the child. The officer should elicit the information by using simple sentence construction and following up "yes" or "no" responses with requests for more detail.

The language the officer uses must suit the age and level of development of the child being interviewed. It is important that the officer stay on the child's level and phrase questions in a language that the victim understands. Young children usually do not know the correct words for various parts of the body, especially sexual organs. When referring to some parts of the body, for example, children often use nicknames. The officer should ask the parents for the meanings of these nicknames and the report should reflect the terms used by the child and include the meaning attached to them by the victim. With older children, the officer's choice and manner of language will often be that of an adult. When talking to adults about sexual relationships, adolescents typically use formal terms. Adolescent girls, for instance, often prefer formal language to child or street talk when discussing the topic of sex because it is less likely to embarrass them.

Because the purpose of the interview is to determine the facts of the crime, the police officer must question the victim about the details of the assault. Some

details are not common knowledge among children, and they frequently cannot describe sexual activities in a vivid way. In addition, children sometimes find it difficult to distinguish between what actually happened and what they imagined to have occurred. This is especially true when the experience is a very emotional one. In overcoming these interview obstacles, the police officer must rely on past experience, exercise patience, and seek the advice of the victim's parents and other professionals.

7. *Witness Evaluation.* During the interview, the police officer has to establish the potential of the child as a credible witness as well as determine the truthfulness of the child's statement. This evaluation is aimed at two characteristics of the victim: the ability to accurately relate the event and to distinguish between fantasy and truth.

The child's capacity to recall and relate information can be tested by asking personal questions. Information should be solicited about family life, friends, school, and other interests. General questions about the community in which the victim lives, such as church and recreational activities, also help to determine the level of intellectual development. The child's replies to these questions not only help in evaluating the child's ability, but also the discussion serves as a means of fostering a rapport.

The victim's ability to tell time is often a crucial factor in establishing when the attack occurred. Questions about the hours and days of the week the child attends school will aid in this evaluation. There are other routine functions in the child's life which the officer can use to determine the time of the offense including television schedule, eating habits, and daylight and nighttime activities.

Whether the child can differentiate between the truth and a lie needs to be assessed by the interviewing officer. The officer should ask if the victim knows the difference between the two and what happens when he/she tells a lie. The victim's answer may be expressed in child terms, but the important thing is the child's attitude. He/she should consider the truth as being positive and telling a lie as being negative. If there is a need, the police officer can verify the child's reputation for honesty by talking with the parents, teachers, friends and parents of friends.

The child's ability to distinguish between fantasy and reality must also be established. If the victim's account seems improbable, overly imaginative, or exaggerated, the police officer may have to probe into the child's background to determine whether he/she often confuses real events with those imagined or seen on T.V.

D. *Ending the Interview.*

The police officer should never end an interview abruptly. When all of the facts have been obtained about the incident, the officer should ask whether there is anything else the child wishes to say. The child should be told that, if anything else about the assault is remembered, the child should tell the parents. If the child is old enough to understand, the officer can explain the investigative steps to be followed.

The police officer should explain to the parents that the child may have to repeat the story to others, including the prosecutor, as well as testify in court. The parents should also be told that, if the case goes to trial, the police will help prepare the child for the courtroom hearing so that the experience will not be emotionally traumatic.

The parents should be cautioned against questioning the child about the incident.

The less the child has to think in detail about the assault, the faster emotional recovery will probably take place. If the child wants to discuss the matter, however, the parents should be advised to talk about it frankly and without embarrassment.

Sometimes child sexual abuse victims and their families experience long-range emotional difficulties. Depending on the circumstances, the police officer may suggest that they seek help of an appropriate social service agency, family physician, psychologist, or pastoral counselor.

E. Other Witnesses

The officer should determine during the interview whether the victim has told anyone else close to him or her about abuse; for example, someone outside the family unit, such as a close friend, a teacher, a doctor, etc., or possibly a family member or relative. The officer should also be conscious during the investigation that other members of the family unit, both male and female, may also be victims. These persons should be interviewed as potential victims/witnesses to the crime. A statement should be taken from the persons named by the victim as having been told of the abuse. This will help to corroborate the victim's statement. In the event that the witness is a child of another family, the parents of that family should be contacted prior to talking to the child. If the child witness is young and does not understand sexual acts, an example opening statement for the officer to use with such a witness might be, "Has your friend told you anything that you thought was wrong that has been happening to him/her?" The child witness will usually provide the information. Again, care must be used to avoid leading questions.

F. Preparing the Child for Court

When the investigation of a child sex offense provides enough evidence that an offender is charged and a trial is scheduled, the police or some other helping person must begin to prepare the child for court. This person should explain to the child courtroom procedures and the roles of the judge, jury, prosecutor, and defense attorney. This explanation must be in such a manner that the child understands it. Where possible, the officer and the prosecutor should familiarize the child with the courtroom. The victim should be taken to the courtroom and allowed to sit in the judge's chair, at the attorney's table, and in the witness chair. The victim should also be familiar with where he/she and parents will be sitting. By acquainting the victim with the legal proceedings, two goals are accomplished. The child will be a better witness because the child's self confidence is reinforced, and the courtroom experience will be less mysterious and frightening.

VIII. MEDICAL EXAMINATION OF CHILDREN FOLLOWING SEXUAL ASSAULT

A. General Guidelines

The medical examination of a child who has been sexually assaulted may differ significantly from that of an adult victim.

1. Generally the abuser is known to the child.
2. Because the child has kept the abuse a secret, due to fear or guilt, disclosure often comes late after the abuse.
3. Because of the delayed disclosure, physical findings resulting from injuries at the time of abuse are often subtle or even absent.

4. Forensic laboratory determinations to document the sexual assault may be inappropriate due to the delayed disclosure.
5. Consequently, the history provided by the child victim becomes the single, most important criteria for documenting sexual abuse of a child. If at all possible, the history must be the child's own statements provided to a skilled, uninvolved, unbiased professional. Not only what the child states, including explicit information about adult sexual practices but also how the child states it is very important. These statements and emotional reactions must be carefully documented in a thorough, factual history. This history as related by the child victim during the course of the medical examination has generally been admissible in court, even in a District Court Criminal proceeding.

B. Objectives of the Medical Evaluation

1. To document the child's exact history in his/her terms.
2. To document physical findings.
3. To collect specimens for forensic laboratory determinations for documentation of the sexual abuse.
4. To provide care for injuries, if present.
5. To evaluate the possibility of pregnancy and try to prevent it if feasible.
6. To prevent sexually transmitted diseases.
7. To minimize the stress of the examination and to prevent further psychological damage.
8. To provide a medical record that will be presentable in court of law if needed.
9. To provide followup health care to assess and further treat possible pregnancy and sexually transmitted diseases.
10. To provide followup psychological care.
11. To protect the child from further abuse.

C. Concerns Regarding the Child Victim.

The young sexual abuse victim may be shy, withdrawn, ashamed, embarrassed and fearful. Particularly if the child knows the perpetrator and if there has been ongoing abuse, the child may take on some of the guilt and responsibility of the assault. Children need to be reminded that this is not their fault and that it is important that they now tell everything that has happened to them in order to help protect them and other children from further abuse. Children need to be able to feel in control of what is being done to their bodies, which is in sharp contrast to the lack of control they experienced during the abuse. They need to be reassured that they are normal and not damaged in any way. A statement made to the child clarifying that his/her body is okay and only his/her feelings have been hurt can be very reassuring. These special needs of the child are:

1. Physical examination and necessary treatment.
2. Protection from further abuse.

3. Minimizing the trauma of diagnostic procedures, including collection of forensic evidence.
4. Followup medical and psychological care.

D. Concerns Regarding the Parents and Extended Family.

Parents of the child victim are understandingly apprehensive at the time of the medical evaluation and often this fear can be transmitted to the child. The parents' concerns and objectives often coincide with those of the medical evaluation. It is helpful therefore to sit down with the parent(s) prior to the evaluation of the child to explain the objectives and the methods. Parents can then be reassured that further physical or psychological trauma to the child is undesirable and that the child will be allowed to be in control and assist in his/her own examination. The importance of interviewing the child, separate from the parent, promoting the child's statement in his/her own words needs to be carefully explained to the parent(s). Because young children have particular difficulty in documenting times when something happened, it is helpful if a parent can provide corroborating information of the timing and the opportunity for the sexual assault(s). When the child victim is very young, it is appropriate for the parent to provide history to the examiner outside of the presence of the child victim in order for the examiner to be able to make some sense out of the young child's statements.

If a parent is unwilling to consent to the examination or the parents are not available to offer that consent, the sexual assault examination of the young child can still safely be performed. The reporting law calls for the prompt investigation of abuse and protection of the child. The medical examination is part of this investigation. In addition, if the child is old enough to consent, he/she may consent to medical services to determine the presence of or treatment of pregnancy and other conditions such as sexually transmitted diseases. Also, medical care may be rendered to minors at any age without the consent of the parent when the professional judges that there would be risk to the minor's life or health if treatment is delayed.

E. The History.

1. It is important to separate children from their parents in order to facilitate the child telling his/her own story. Young children will otherwise defer to their mothers and expect them to tell the details of what has happened and older children may be embarrassed and secretive about stating the specific details of abuse in front of their parents. Young and older children alike tend to want to spare their parents the emotional trauma of hearing the explicit details of the abuse. These details can be elicited in a private setting in a nonjudgemental and unemotional way. Young children can be easily separated from their parents by inviting them to go with the examiner to get a glass of juice or some toys, rather than forcibly separating them from the parent.
2. Establish rapport with the child by discussing things in their life with which they are very comfortable, such as school, friends, family, birthdays, and holidays.
3. Begin with open ended questions such as "I understand something has happened to you or in your family?" "Can you tell me about it?" Some children tend to clam up at this point. Younger children are often more spontaneous and less guarded. Older children often feel guilty and embarrassed or don't want to get the known perpetrator in trouble. Begin with supporting details such as "Where were you?" "What room?" "Where was everybody else?" "Why were you alone?" "What clothes were you wearing?" "What happened to your clothes?" "His clothes?" If questions need to be asked, as they often do that require only a yes or no answer, they need to

be followed with a related question that provides further details such as, "Did he take your clothes off?" "How far off?" "Or did he touch you some place?" "Where?" "Point to where he touched you." "How did it feel?" "Did it hurt?" "Where?" "When?" or "Did he touch you any place else?" "Where?" "With what?" This last question can be repeated several different times until all the possible combinations of sexual touching have been allowed for. Descriptions of adult sexual anatomy and physiology that are learned through the process of the sexual assault are important to document. "Did anything ever come out of his penis?" "Where did it go?" "What was it like?" "Who cleaned it up?" are all helpful questions to get at this kind of detail. Careful descriptions of penetration and ejaculation can be further elicited during the physical examination. Children who are naive to adult sexual practices are often unaware of what they are implying by the statement, "His penis went *in* my vagina."

4. It is important to watch for how the child relays the history. Emotional reactions, reluctance, and difficulty in making statements and sense of relief once he/she has described it must be documented. Children's truthfulness is reflected by spontaneity, guilt, reluctance, and detailed information in their responses. Some have special names for anatomic parts, some need to be able to demonstrate their power and control in their relationship despite the victimization. Careful documentation of these observations is extremely important.
5. Documentation of the interview with the child can be by exact notes and quotations written down during the examination and recorded in a typed narrative summary, by video taping the interview or recording the audio portion only. There are advantages and disadvantages to all three methods.
6. Specific pertinent history from the adolescent victim.
 - a. Time, date and place of the incident.
 - b. Physical injuries inflicted.
 - c. Sexual acts performed. Was there penetration? Mouth, vagina, rectum? Did ejaculation occur? Where?
 - d. Identity of the perpetrator. Age, relationship to victim.
 - e. Menstrual history of the victim. Date of LMP.
 - f. Contraception, if any, used by the victim or assailant during the assault?
 - g. Previous sexual activity and date of last intercourse before the recent sexual assault.

F. *The Physical Examination*

1. Young children can more accurately recall and report what has happened to them by using their own bodies and the sensations elicited by the examination. They should initially be asked to report to the examiner where they remember the perpetrator touching them, or putting something in them, whichever the history has indicated. Children are often reluctant to touch themselves in front of the examiner and need to be supported and encouraged to go ahead and show them exactly where the perpetrator has touched them. Little boys can be asked to mimic, using their own penis, scrotum or anus, how they have been touched.

2. The entire body should be carefully inspected for bruises, hickeys, areas of fluorescence with Woods Light indicating the possible presence of semen, and particular attention needs to be paid to the examination of the genital and rectal areas. Cooperation and relaxation by the child, and a good light source, are the minimum requirements for this part of the examination.
3. Colposcopy is currently being used by some to carefully examine the genital and anal area for subtle, acute and old findings of the abuse. The colposcope provides a good light source, magnification from 10 to 20X and photographic record of the subtle injuries as noted by the colposcope.
4. Most injuries to young female victims, involving attempted penetration into the vagina, result in subtle injuries of the posterior fourchette or injuries to the hymen. The female genitalia is made up of thin, friable glistening, mucosal surfaces that normally appear red or hyperemic. Scratches, abrasions and stretching force cause these thin and vulnerable tissues to show injury. However, minor injuries of these mucosa heal readily within a few days without scarring.
5. The hymen is a variable structure in young children.
 - a. It is always present.
 - b. It commonly takes different forms: redundant, thin, wispy, vilamentous, annular, semilunar, U shaped.
 - c. Rare variations are: imperforate, septate, punctate and cribform.
 - d. Opening across the hymen membrane generally is less than 4 to 5 mm. in young children but gradually enlarges almost a mm. per year until pubertal age. It is generally accepted that an 8 year old girl therefore can have an opening measured across the hymen membrane of 7 to 8 mm.
 - e. Actual disruptions of the hymen with neovascularity or scar tissue binding down the hymen from inside the vaginal vault, across the scarred hymen to the posterior forchette are important findings to document sexual abuse. If the examination is close to the time of the sexual assault, acute transections of the hymen may be noted.
6. The anus

Acute fissures, submucosal bleeding or actual lacerations may be signs of acute rectal penetration. Cautious rectal penetration can be accomplished by finger or penis without evidence of injury. Healed scars that wrinkle or pucker or appear as rectal tags may be signs of old injury, resulting from previous assault. Increased pigmentation and hypertrophic mucosa of the rectum may also be associated with repeated rectal penetration.

G. Forensic Laboratory Determinations

If the sexual assault has been recent, if the child has not bathed since the assault and if there was ejaculation during the assault, it is very likely that evidence of semen may be found. However, because of delayed disclosure in most cases of sexual abuse of young children, it is unusual to find semen. Because finding any evidence of sperm, even a dead sperm high in the vaginal vault or between the molars has been documented up to a week following the assault, forensic laboratory determinations should be done whenever there is a question regarding exactly when the last assault took

place or if it has taken place within one week. In general, however, rape protocols involving adult female victims recommend looking for semen only in those women sexually assaulted within the last 72 hours.

1. *Documentation of the Presence of Semen:*

- by finding motile sperm (on wet mount)
 - by finding sperm heads (on dry slide)
 - by finding acid phosphatase, an enzyme in seminal fluid
- a. Moisten 2 swabs with saline and swab over areas on skin that fluoresce with Woods light — describe where samples are from.
 - b. If semen was deposited in the mouth, vagina or rectum, take swabs from those orifices. If less than 72 hours has elapsed since the assault, get specimens from all orifices expected to be involved in the assault. Since children tend to minimize and often disclose only part of the abuse initially, it is better to look for semen wherever possible when the assault is disclosed, shortly after it occurs. If there has been a history of sexual assault within the past week, obtain specimens from those specific areas involved. Nonmotile sperm (sperm heads) have been found high in the vaginal vault of a 2 year old four days following the sexual assault and the child had not yet been bathed. (Levitt, 1984) Sperm have been found by swabbing between the molars one week following the sexual assault.

1st swab — from vaginal vault (posterior fornix) for sperm motility. Swirl in 3 cc. sterile saline. Wring out against the edge of the tube and discard.

2nd swab — from vaginal vault (posterior fornix) and vulva. Roll swab on clean slide for permanent stains. Spray immediately with cytology (pap) fixative. Label slides with diamond pencil. Place swabs in tube for acid phosphatase.

3rd swab — for sperm typing from vaginal vault (posterior fornix). Air dry and place in separate envelope and label.
 - c. In the young child when a speculum cannot be used, small moistened urethral calgiswabs can be placed without further trauma to the child by waiting for the vaginal vault to gape and gently inserting the swab through the vaginal hymen orifice without poking at the hymen or touching it, and slowly allowing the secretions of the vagina to further lubricate the swab. These swabs can be gently inserted blindly, high into the vaginal vault and posterior fornix.
 - d. Repeat the above collections in Number 2 from other sites (mouth, rectum). Take swab from anal canal and anal verge before digital exam and before lubricant is used.

2. *Documentation of Sexually Transmitted Diseases.*

a. *Gonorrhea and Chlamydia*

If vaginal discharge is noted or sexually transmitted diseases are suspected or screened for, take swab from endocervical canal of the cervix or blindly as described above in a young child from the vaginal vault and culture for both *Neisseria* and *Chlamydia* (or microtrak for *Chlamydia*). The subcommittee of the American Academy of Pediatrics has recently stated: *Physicians should assume that children with gonorrhea have acquired it by sexual contact and that most such contacts are abusive. The diagnosis of gonorrhea in a prepubertal*

child will dictate reports to both protective agencies and the Public Health Department.

- b. *Trichomonas vaginalis*. Do wet prep.
 - c. *Gardnerella* or *Haemophilus vaginalis*. Clue cells on smear of vaginal discharge or fishy odor released when slide is treated with K.O.H.
 - d. Herpes. Herpes simplex virus (HSV2) is primarily sexually transmitted. Antibody titers are nearly absent in children and in celibate priests.
 - e. *Condyloma accuminata* (venereal warts). Past studies document approximately one half of children with *Condyloma accuminata* have been sexually abused. With better investigation for this etiology, perhaps this number is higher.
 - f. Syphilis. Do VDRL to test for syphilis in 8 weeks.
 - g. AIDS. Testing for HTLV3 when the perpetrator is known to be sexually active in the community, particularly with males, is justified.
 - h. Treatment. Treat documented sexually transmitted diseases as outlined in the CDC guidelines. Repeat culture for gonorrhea, if suspected, in 5 to 7 days. Since Chlamydia is often associated with gonorrhea, treatment with Tetracycline or with Erythromycin for young children is suggested.
3. *Pregnancy Concerns and Prophylaxis.*
- a. Menstrual history (LMP and regularity of cycle).
 - b. Current contraception — preassault.
 - c. Contraception during assault.
 - d. Hormonal therapy if pregnancy is a likely possibility — Ethinyl Estradiol 2.0 mg. bid for 5 days or Ovral 2 tablets q 12 hours x 2 doses. (total = 4 tabs) Hormonal therapy may result in increased risk to fetus if pregnancy follows. Therefore Ovral or Ethinyl Estradiol is not recommended unless elective abortion is likely, should pregnancy occur. Hormonal therapy should be started within 24 and not more than 72 hours following the sexual assault.

H. *Reporting Requirements*

A physician is required by Minnesota Law, the Reporting of Maltreatment of Minors Act, to report suspected sexual abuse of children. Sexual abuse includes inappropriate sexual touching, fondling of genitals both by the perpetrator and having the child fondle the perpetrator's genitals and penetration of orifices by finger, objects, or sexual parts. See Section XI for additional information.

IX. SUPPORT COUNSELING FOR CHILD SEXUAL ABUSE VICTIMS AND THEIR FAMILIES

In child molestation cases, there are two essential components to supportive counseling: 1) services to the child victim, and 2) services to the parent(s) of the victim. How a child

understands the sexual abuse will vary with age, cognitive development, and messages about the abuse from parents or other caregivers. Children of all ages (from about 2 and up) may benefit from the opportunity to talk about the abuse in a safe, neutral environment of concern. Supportive counseling to the child includes allowing the child to describe the abuse and to ventilate feelings about the abuse, as well as the counselor providing information and support. The child may have specific questions (e.g. will it happen again) as well as unstated questions (e.g. are his/her parents angry at the child).

Children who have previously described the abuse, e.g., to a child protection worker, may be reluctant to repeat the account. It is important not to pressure children into disclosures but to reinforce their need to assume some control over what happens to them even if this involves initial refusal to discuss the abuse. Establishing rapport and conveying to the child that the counselor is trustworthy are essential.

Again it is important to remember that each child's reaction to sexual abuse is unique. Children often react in typical ways (e.g. anger at the perpetrator) but this must be checked out with each victim and not merely assumed to be true.

Children are often protective of their parents and do not want to "upset" them. But the child should be encouraged to communicate directly with the parents. This may include telling the parents when the child has bad dreams, crying with the parents instead of alone, and asking parents directly for reassurance that they will protect the child from further abuse.

Work with parents of molested children has two major goals: 1) to assist parents in meeting the child's needs after the abuse, and 2) providing an opportunity for the parents to discuss their own reactions. Parents' reactions often affect the child's perception of the abuse.

Parents of children who are sexually abused often feel scared, angry, helpless, and responsible for the abuse. Let them know that it's O.K. to have these feelings and to express them to other adults. The child, however, needs the parents to be calm and supportive and to control their other feelings when the child is present. It is essential to help parents separate their feelings from the child's and to focus on how to help the child deal with the abuse.

Some of the key issues to work on with parents include:

- * Neither pressuring the child to talk about the abuse nor cutting off discussion if the child wants to talk.
- * Clearly conveying to the child that the abuse was not his/her fault.
- * Answering the child's questions to the best of their ability.
- * Respecting the child's privacy — limiting the number of people told about the abuse.
- * Avoiding becoming overprotective of the child.
- * Sharing the parents' own feelings, but in limited and constructive ways (e.g. "I feel angry this happened to you" vs. "I want to kill that man").
- * Finding other adults that the parents can rely on to support them in handling their own feelings.

- * Providing information to the parents about the process that follows disclosure (e.g., possible police interview, medical exam, court appearance).
- * Assisting parents in talking about sexual abuse prevention with all their children, especially conveying that it is never too late to do this.
- * Referring parents for professional therapy when needed (e.g., if marital problems develop following the abuse).
- * Conveying the importance of not taking the law into their own hands.

Parents may want to avoid talking about the abuse. They need reassurance that while talking about child molestation is not easy, talking about it as if it were just another bad experience may keep the child from worrying as much. In many cases sexual abuse does not result in physical injuries. However, the experience may have an emotional effect that may not be evident immediately after the abuse. Parents need encouragement to continue to be physically affectionate with the child following abuse as this may be a source of reassurance to the child. Parents can convey directly to the child that they are not angry at the child, they don't blame the child, nor do they see the child as "dirty" or "damaged."

In family sexual abuse cases, the issues outlined above may get clouded by the fact that the perpetrator is a family member. This may result in disbelief of the child and even when the child is believed, he/she may not receive clear support from family members, who often feel caught between the perpetrator and the victim.

In addition to the issues described above, supportive counseling with incest victims may need to focus more on:

- * Conveying belief of the child
- * Assuring the child he/she is not responsible for any disruption that occurs (e.g., removal of the father/brother from the home)
- * Indicating that he/she is not at fault for not reporting the abuse earlier

Some incest victims attempt to minimize both the extent of the abuse as well as their reactions to the abuse. Older victims may want to "forget" about the abuse and resist talking about the details of the experience(s). It is important not to assume that a child feels any particular way following abuse. Many children are more upset and confused than angry at the perpetrator. A neutral approach to the child is essential to providing a safe environment for the child to describe his/her thoughts and feelings about the abuse.

Work with parents in incest families is similarly complicated by loyalty conflicts. In father-child cases, the mother often feels caught between her desire to support her child and need to believe her spouse would not hurt one of the children. In sibling incest cases, parents are often confused about whether to believe the victim, how abuse could have happened in their home, and whether sibling incest is even a problem.

Those providing counseling to incest families need to avoid blaming any family member(s). Focus on the parents' pain and other feelings is more likely to assist the family in dealing with the problem rather than avoiding it. The issues outlined above for helping parents of child molestation victims are also essential with parents in incest families.

Incest families need professional therapy in assisting them in changing dysfunctional family dynamics and relationships. When parents insist that they can deal with this

problem without outside help, discussion of their fears about therapy may be beneficial.

X. WHAT TO DO IF A CHILD TELLS YOU ABOUT SEXUAL ABUSE*

If you are the first person whom the child tells about sexual abuse, you have a key role in assisting the child and family in coping with the crisis that often ensues.

- * Adopt a neutral attitude in talking with the child and other family members.
- * Allow the child to tell his/her story in private and without prompting. Do not press the child for details of the abuse. Respond to the child's account in a calm, matter-of-fact manner.
- * Ask the child how he/she feels about the abuse and what he/she would like to see happen. Let the child know that whatever feelings he/she has are O.K. and normal.
- * Ask the child if he/she has any fears about what will happen following disclosure.
- * Tell the child you're glad he/she told and that you will try to prevent this from happening again.
- * Offer the child an opportunity to ask any questions he/she may have.
- * Reassure the child that you believe him/her and that the abuse was not the child's fault.
- * Avoid agreeing to keep any secrets.
- * Provide clear, matter-of-fact feedback to parents about the content of the child's disclosures and the recommended process for them to follow.
- * With older children and with all parents, be honest about your obligation to report. Offer parents the opportunity to make the first report but let them know you will make a report whether they do or not.
- * If a child has any apparent injuries, assist the parents in getting the child seen by a physician familiar with sexual abuse examination procedures.
- * In situations of imminent harm to a child, you may call local law enforcement and request immediate action be taken to protect the child.
- * Assist parents who need temporary shelter to protect themselves and their children by making contact with social services or local shelter facilities.
- * If you want to discuss your options, call your county social services agency or the local Rape Crisis Center.
- * Offer to stay with the child/parents through the whole process.

XI. REPORTING CHILD SEXUAL ABUSE

The Minnesota Legislature has had a mandatory reporting law since 1975.** This law makes it mandatory for most people working with children who know or have reason to believe a child is being neglected or physically or sexually abused to report the information

*Adapted from material developed by the Child Sex Abuse Prevention Project, Illusion Theatre, Minneapolis, 1980.

**See Appendix: Child Abuse Reporting Law.

immediately to the local welfare agency, police department or the county sheriff. In order to better understand our responsibilities to the abused child, we must have an understanding of this law and its ramifications.

A. *General Rules for Reporting Sexual Abuse*

1. If you have contact with or have responsibility for children in your work, you are probably mandated to report any abuse.
2. You must report if you know about the abuse or if you have reason to believe a child is being sexually abused.
3. You must report personally.
4. You must report immediately.
5. Do not attempt to investigate the case on your own.
6. Do not contact the child's parents on your own.
7. Oral reports must be followed as soon as possible by written report.
8. Reports can be made to either the police department or the county social service office.
9. You will be immune from civil liability if you report in good faith.
10. If you fail to report you can be punished criminally.

B. *Who Must Report*

RULE: Generally, anyone who works with children or is responsible for children in a professional capacity.

Specifically, the statute is directed at people who are involved in:

1. The healing arts — for example, doctors and nurses
2. Social services — for example, social workers, probation agents
3. Hospital administration — for example, emergency room admitting personnel, directors of hospitals
4. Psychiatric or psychological treatment — for example, counselors, psychiatrists, psychiatric social workers, psychologists
5. Child care — for example, employees in day care centers, nurseries
6. Education — for example, teachers, school counselors, coaches
7. Law enforcement — for example, police officers

Others may voluntarily report any case of suspected abuse with the same statutory protections.

C. *What Must Be Reported*

RULE: All cases of *suspected* sexual abuse.

Question: What is the purpose of the statute?

Answer: The purpose is to notify the agencies that are trained to investigate abuse cases so children who need protection will get it.

Question: Do you have to be absolutely sure that the child is being abused?

Answer: No. The statute states that the report should be made when you know of the abuse OR when you have reason to believe a child has been sexually abused.

Question: Should you try to investigate the case yourself to get more information before you report?

Answer: No. All you need is *reasonable cause* to believe the abuse occurred or is occurring. Let the police and welfare department do the investigating.

Examples of Information Which Would Constitute Reasonable Cause:

1. A child has unusual tear or abrasion in the vaginal area that is not explained by the parent or child consistent with the injury.
2. A child tells the school counselor her father raped her or is bothering her in her bed at night.
3. A child has trouble sitting in school, complains of an infection or itching between the legs and perhaps shows signs of bruising on the face or arms.
4. A juvenile runaway tells her probation officer that she hates her father because he is always touching her body.
5. A small child is taken to the doctor with repeated anal or vaginal infections.
6. A neighbor reports the child's mother believes incest is occurring.

D. *When Must the Report Be Made*

RULE: Immediately report.

Do not wait to see if you can find out more information or to see if it will happen again. It will surely happen again, and the next time may be too late. The child may not tell you again if he/she does not feel you responded the first time.

Most importantly, do not contact the child's parents. They will be contacted by the appropriate agency. To contact them early in an investigation may mean that the child will never feel comfortable repeating the information. The parents may apply pressure to the child and the case will be lost forever, and the child's welfare will not be protected. You are under no obligation to contact the parents at any time.

E. *Who Should Receive the Report*

RULE: Report to the police department, county sheriff, or to the child protection division of the county social service department.

A report may be made to the county social service department, county sheriff, or to the police department. It does not matter which agency receives the notice since they are obligated to exchange information and reports with one another.

CAUTION: Reporting the abuse to your supervisor does not relieve you of your individual duty to report the case.

Some agencies have attempted to set up their own internal reporting process. This will not relieve the individual of his/her own responsibility under that Statute. For example, a school rule stating that teachers must report all cases of abuse first to the school nurse, school counselor or principal, rather than to an outside agency, is placing teachers in the position of violating the law if the report is not actually made to the police or social service department. The reporting duty rests on the individual.

F. *How Must the Report Be Made*

RULE: An oral report must be immediately followed by a written report.

The report should contain:

1. The identity of the child.
2. The identity of the person responsible for the care of the child.
3. The nature and extent of injuries.
4. The name and address of the reporter.

While it is necessary to reveal your identity if you are someone mandated to report, your name will remain private information if you choose it to be while the case is being investigated. Therefore, unless and until the abuse is verified and it is necessary to employ some judicial proceeding *and* your testimony is required, your name will not be released to the child or to the offender. It is important that you identify yourself to have a record that you fulfilled your legal responsibility.

G. *The Law Protects the Reporter*

RULE: The reporter is immune from civil liability.

If you are one who must report abuse or you have done so voluntarily, and if you have made the report in good faith, you are immune from civil liability. In other words, you have a statutory defense to any suit for money damages by the offender or family unless you *knowingly* filed a false report or your reporting was done recklessly. The law also provides protection to the reporter from retaliation by an employer or supervisor.

H. *Consequences for Not Reporting*

RULE: You may be charged with a misdemeanor and if found guilty punished by a fine up to \$500 and/or 90 days in jail.

If you have knowledge of sexual abuse or a reasonable cause to believe a child is being sexually abused, and your profession is set out in the statute, you must report your suspicions. If it is later determined that you did not report, you may be charged with violating the law. If you are convicted, the judge could send you to jail for up to 90 days and/or impose a fine of up to \$500. You do not have the option of not reporting.

I. *Action After the Report Is Received*

RULE: The welfare department must initiate an investigation immediately upon the receipt of a report.

If the child is determined to be in a situation which appears to be dangerous to the child's health or welfare, a police officer may take a child into protective custody until a determination can be made of the appropriate action to be taken. The investigators will want to talk with the child first, then with other possible victims and with witnesses. Only after these efforts have been made should the parents be contacted with the verified information. A person making a report is, upon request, entitled to receive a concise summary of the disposition of the report, unless the welfare department decides that release of the information would harm the child.

APPENDIX
CHILD ABUSE REPORTING LAW

APPENDIX

Child Abuse Reporting Law (Minnesota Statutes 626.556)

626.556 Reporting of maltreatment of minors.

Subdivision 1. Public policy. The legislature hereby declares that the public policy of this state is to protect children whose health or welfare may be jeopardized through physical abuse, neglect or sexual abuse; to strengthen the family and make the home, school, and community safe for children by promoting responsible child care in all settings; and to provide, when necessary, a safe temporary or permanent home environment for physically or sexually abused children.

In addition, it is the policy of this state to require the reporting of suspected neglect, physical or sexual abuse of children in the home, school, and community settings; to provide for the voluntary reporting of abuse or neglect of children; to require the investigation of the reports; and to provide protective and counseling services in appropriate cases.

Subd. 2. Definitions. As used in this section, the following terms have the meanings given them unless the specific content indicates otherwise:

(a) "Sexual abuse" means the subjection by a person responsible for the child's care, or by a person in a position of authority, as defined in section 609.341, subdivision 10, to any act which constitutes a violation of section 609.342, 609.343, 609.344, or 609.345. Sexual abuse also includes any act which involves a minor which constitutes a violation of sections 609.321 to 609.324 or 617.246.

(b) "Person responsible for the child's care" means (1) an individual functioning within the family unit and having responsibilities for the care of the child such as a parent, guardian, or other person having similar care responsibilities, or (2) an individual functioning outside the family unit and having responsibilities for the care of the child such as a teacher, school administrator, or other lawful custodian of a child having either full-time or short-term care responsibilities including, but not limited to, day care, baby sitting, whether paid or unpaid, counseling, teaching, and coaching.

(c) "Neglect" means failure by a person responsible for the child's care to supply a child with necessary food, clothing, shelter or medical care when reasonably able to do so or failure to protect a child from conditions or actions which imminently and seriously endanger the child's physical or mental health when reasonably able to do so. Nothing in this section shall be construed to (1) mean that a child is neglected solely because the child's parent, guardian or other person responsible for his care in good faith selects and depends upon spiritual means or prayer for treatment or care of disease or remedial care of the child, or (2) impose upon persons, not otherwise legally responsible for providing a child with necessary food, clothing, shelter or medical care, a duty to provide that care. Neglect also means "medical neglect" as defined in section 260.015, subd. 10, clause (e).

(d) "Physical abuse" means any physical injury inflicted by a person responsible for the child's care on a child other than by accidental means; or any physical injury that cannot reasonably be explained by the child's history of injuries.

(e) "Report" means any report received by the local welfare agency, police department or county sheriff pursuant to this section.

(f) "Facility" means a day care facility, residential facility,

agency, hospital, sanatorium, or other facility or institution required to be licensed pursuant to sections 144.50 to 144.58, 241.021, or 245.781 to 245.812.

(g) "Operator" means an operator or agency as defined in section 245.782.

(h) "Commissioner" means the commissioner of human services.

(i) "Assessment" includes authority to interview the child, the person or persons responsible for the child's care, the alleged perpetrator, and any other person with knowledge of the abuse or neglect for the purpose of gathering the facts, assessing the risk to the child, and formulating a plan.

(j) "Practice of social services," for the purposes of subdivision 3, includes but is not limited to employee assistance counseling.

Subd. 3. Persons mandated to report. (a) A professional or his delegate who is engaged in the practice of the healing arts, social services, hospital administration, psychological or psychiatric treatment, child care, education, or law enforcement who knows or has reason to believe a child is being neglected or physically or sexually abused shall immediately report the information to the local welfare agency, police department or the county sheriff. The police department or the county sheriff, upon receiving a report, shall immediately notify the local welfare agency orally and in writing. The local welfare agency, upon receiving a report, shall immediately notify the local police department or the county sheriff orally and in writing. The county sheriff and the head of every local welfare agency and police department shall each designate a person within their agency, department, or office who is responsible for ensuring that the notification duties of this paragraph and paragraph (b) are carried out. Nothing in this subdivision shall be construed to require more than one report from any institution, facility, school or agency.

(b) Any person may voluntarily report to the local welfare agency, police department or the county sheriff if he knows, has reason to believe, or suspects a child is being neglected or subjected to physical or sexual abuse. The police department or the county sheriff, upon receiving a report, shall immediately notify the local welfare agency orally and in writing. The local welfare agency, upon receiving a report, shall immediately notify the local police department or the county sheriff orally and in writing.

(c) A person mandated to report physical or sexual child abuse or neglect occurring within a licensed facility shall report the information to the agency responsible for licensing the facility. A health or corrections agency receiving a report may request the local welfare agency to provide assistance pursuant to subdivisions 10, 10a and 10b.

(d) Any person mandated to report shall, upon request to the local welfare agency, receive a summary of the disposition of any report made by that reporter, unless release would be detrimental to the best interests of the child. Any person who is not mandated to report shall, upon request to the local welfare agency, receive a concise summary of the disposition of any report made by that reporter, unless release would be detrimental to the best interests of the child.

(e) For purposes of this subdivision, "immediately" means as

soon as possible but in no event longer than 24 hours.

Subd. 4. Immunity from liability. (a) The following persons are immune from any civil or criminal liability that otherwise might result for their actions, if they are acting in good faith:

(1) any person making a voluntary or mandated report under subd. 3 or assisting in an assessment under this section; and

(2) Any public or private school, facility as defined in subdivision 2, or the employee of any public or private school or facility who permits access by a local welfare agency or local law enforcement agency and assists in good faith in an investigation or assessment pursuant to subdivision 10.

(b) A person who is supervisor or social worker employed by a local welfare agency complying with subdivisions 10 and 11 or any related rule or provision of law is immune from any civil or criminal liability that might otherwise result from the person's actions, if the person is acting in good faith and exercising due care by reason of his action.

(c) This subdivision does not provide immunity to any person for failure to make a required report or for committing neglect, physical abuse, or sexual abuse of a child.

Subd. 4a. Retaliation prohibited. (a) An employer of any person required to make reports under subdivision 3 shall not retaliate against the person for reporting in good faith abuse or neglect pursuant to this section, or against a child with respect to whom a report is made, because of the report.

(b) The employer of any person required to report under subdivision 3 who retaliates against the person because of a report of abuse or neglect is liable to that person for actual damages and, in addition, a penalty up to \$1,000.

(c) There shall be a rebuttable presumption that any adverse action within 90 days of a report is retaliatory. For purposes of this paragraph, the term "adverse action" refers to action taken by an employer of a person required to report under subdivision 3 which is involved in a report against the person making the report or the child with respect to whom the report was made because of the report, and includes, but is not limited to:

(1) discharge, suspension, termination, or transfer from the facility, institution, school, or agency;

(2) discharge from or termination of employment;

(3) demotion or reduction in remuneration for services; or

(4) restriction or prohibition of access to the facility, institution, school, agency, or persons affiliated with it.

Subd. 5. Falsified reports. Any person who knowingly or recklessly makes a false report under the provisions of this section shall be liable in a civil suit for any actual damages suffered by the person or persons so reported and for any punitive damages set by the court or jury.

Subd. 6. Failure to report. Any person mandated by this section to report who knows or has reason to believe that a child is neglected or physically or sexually abused, as defined in subd. 2, and fails to report is guilty of a misdemeanor.

Subd. 6a. Failure to Notify. If a local welfare agency receives a report under subd. 3, paragraph (a) or (b) and fails to notify the local police department or county sheriff as required by subd. 3, paragraph (a) or (b), the person within the agency who is responsible for ensuring that notification is made shall be subject to disciplinary action in keeping with the agency's existing policy or collective bargaining agreement on discipline of employees. If a local police department or a county sheriff receives a report under subd. 3, paragraph (a) or (b) and fails to notify the local welfare agency as required by subd. 3, paragraph (a) or (b), the person within the police department or county sheriff's office who is responsible for ensuring that notification is

made shall be subject to disciplinary action in keeping with the agency's existing policy or collective bargaining agreement on discipline of employees.

Subd. 7. Report. An oral report shall be made immediately by telephone or otherwise. An oral report made by a person required under subdivision 3 to report shall be followed as soon as possible by a report in writing to the appropriate police department, the county sheriff or local welfare agency. Any report shall be of sufficient content to identify the child, any person believed to be responsible for the abuse or neglect of the child if the person is known, the nature and extent of the abuse or neglect and the name and address of the reporter. Written reports received by a police department or the county sheriff shall be forwarded immediately to the local welfare agency. The police department or the county sheriff may keep copies of reports received by them. Copies of written reports received by a local welfare department shall be forwarded immediately to the local police department or the county sheriff.

A written copy of a report maintained by personnel of agencies, other than welfare or law enforcement agencies, which are subject to chapter 13 shall be confidential. An individual subject of the report may obtain access to the original report as provided by subdivision 11.

Subd. 8. Evidence not privileged. No evidence relating to the neglect or abuse of a child or to any prior incidents of neglect or abuse involving any of the same persons accused of neglect or abuse shall be excluded in any proceeding arising out of the alleged neglect or physical or sexual abuse on the grounds of privilege set forth in sections 595.02, subdivision 1, paragraphs (a), (d), or (g).

Subd. 9. Mandatory reporting to a medical examiner or coroner. When a person required to report under the provisions of subdivision 3 knows or has reason to believe a child has died as a result of neglect or physical or sexual abuse, he shall report that information to the appropriate medical examiner or coroner instead of the local welfare agency, police department or county sheriff. Medical examiners or coroners shall notify the local welfare agency, police department or county sheriff in instances in which they believe that the child has died as a result of neglect or physical or sexual abuse. The medical examiner or coroner shall complete an investigation as soon as feasible and report the findings to the police department or county sheriff and the local welfare agency.

Subd. 10. Duties of local welfare agency and local law enforcement agency upon receipt of a report. (a) If the report alleges neglect, physical abuse, or sexual abuse by a parent, guardian, or individual functioning within the family unit as a person responsible for the child's care, the local welfare agency shall immediately conduct an assessment and offer protective social services for purposes of preventing further abuses, safeguarding and enhancing the welfare of the abused or neglected minor, and preserving family life whenever possible. When necessary the local welfare agency shall seek authority to remove the child from the custody of his parent, guardian or adult with whom he is living. In performing any of these duties, the local welfare agency shall maintain appropriate records.

(b) Authority of the local welfare agency responsible for assessing the child abuse report and of the local law enforcement agency for investigating the alleged abuse includes, but is not limited to, authority to interview, without parental consent, the alleged victim and any other minors who currently reside with or who have resided with the alleged perpetrator. The interview may take place at school or any facility or other place where the alleged victim or other minors might be found and may take place outside the presence of the perpetrator or parent, legal custodian, guardian, or school official. Except as provided in this clause, the parent, legal custodian, or guardian shall be notified by the responsible local welfare or law enforcement agency no later than the conclusion of the investigation or assessment that this interview has occurred. Notwithstanding rule 49.02 of the Minnesota Rules of Procedure for Juvenile Courts, the juvenile court may, after hearing on an ex parte motion by the local wel-

fare agency, order that, where reasonable cause exists, the agency withhold notification of this interview from the parent, legal custodian, or guardian. If the interview took place or is to take place on school property, the order shall specify that school officials may not disclose to the parent, legal custodian, or guardian the contents of the notification of intent to interview the child on school property, as provided under paragraph (c), and any other related information regarding the interview that may be a part of the child's school record. A copy of the order shall be sent by the local welfare or law enforcement agency to the appropriate school official.

(c) When the local welfare or local law enforcement agency determines that an interview should take place on school property, written notification of intent to interview the child on school property must be received by school officials prior to the interview. The notification shall include the name of the child to be interviewed, the purpose of the interview, and a reference to the statutory authority to conduct an interview on school property. For interviews conducted by the local welfare agency, the notification shall be signed by the chairman of the county welfare board or his designee. The notification shall be private data on individuals subject to the provisions of this paragraph. School officials may not disclose to the parent, legal custodian, or guardian the contents of the notification or any other related information regarding the interview until notified in writing by the local welfare or law enforcement agency that the investigation or assessment has been concluded. Until that time, the local welfare or law enforcement agency shall be solely responsible for any disclosures regarding the nature of the assessment or investigation.

Except where the alleged perpetrator is believed to be a school official or employee, the time and place, and manner of the interview on school premises shall be within the discretion of school officials, but the local welfare or law enforcement agency shall have the exclusive authority to determine who may attend the interview. The conditions as to time, place, and manner of the interview set by the school officials shall be reasonable and the interview shall be conducted not more than 24 hours after the receipt of the notification unless another time is deemed necessary by agreement between the school officials and the local welfare or law enforcement agency. Where the school fails to comply with the provisions of this paragraph, the juvenile court may order the school to comply. Every effort shall be made to reduce the disruption of the educational program of the child, other students, or school staff when an interview is conducted on school premises.

(d) Where the perpetrator or a person responsible for the care of the alleged victim or other minor prevents access to the victim or other minor by the local welfare agency, the juvenile court may order the parents, legal custodian, or guardian to produce the alleged victim or other minor for questioning by the local welfare agency or the local law enforcement agency outside the presence of the perpetrator or any person responsible for the child's care at reasonable places and times as specified by court order.

(e) Before making an order under paragraph (d), the court shall issue an order to show cause, either upon its own motion or upon a verified petition, specifying the basis for the requested interviews and fixing the time and place of the hearing. The order to show cause shall be served personally and shall be heard in the same manner as provided in other cases in the juvenile court. The court shall consider the need for appointment of a guardian ad litem to protect the best interests of the child. If a guardian ad litem is appointed, he shall be present at the hearing on the order to show cause.

(f) The commissioner, the local welfare agencies responsible for investigating reports, and the local law enforcement agencies have the right to enter facilities as defined in subdivision 2 and to inspect and copy the facility's records, including medical records, as part of the investigation. Notwithstanding the provisions of chapter 13, they also have the right to inform the facility under investigation that they are conducting an investigation, to disclose to the facility the names of the individuals under inves-

tigation for abusing or neglecting a child, and to provide the facility with a copy of the report and the investigative findings.

Subd. 10a. Abuse outside the family unit. If the report alleges neglect, physical abuse, or sexual abuse by a person responsible for the child's care functioning outside the family unit in a setting other than a facility as defined in subdivision 2, the local welfare agency shall immediately notify the appropriate law enforcement agency and shall offer appropriate social services for the purpose of safeguarding and enhancing the welfare of the abused or neglected minor.

Subd. 10b. Duties of commissioner; neglect or abuse in a facility. (a) If the report alleges that a child in the care of a facility as defined in subdivision 2 is neglected, physically abused, or sexually abused by an individual in that facility, the commissioner shall immediately investigate. The commissioner shall arrange for the transmittal to him of reports received by local agencies and may delegate to a local welfare agency the duty to investigate reports. In conducting an investigation under this section, the commissioner has the powers and duties specified for local welfare agencies under this section. The commissioner or local welfare agency may interview any children who are or have been in the care of a facility under investigation and of their parents, guardians, or legal custodians.

(b) Prior to any interview, the commissioner or local welfare agency shall notify the parent, guardian, or legal custodian of a child who will be interviewed in the manner provided for in subdivision 10d, paragraph (a). If reasonable efforts to reach the parent, guardian, or legal custodian of a child in an out-of-home placement have failed, the child may be interviewed if there is reason to believe the interview is necessary to protect the child or other children in the facility. The commissioner or local agency must provide the information required in this subdivision to the parent, guardian, or legal custodian of a child interviewed without parental notification as soon as possible after the interview. When the investigation is completed, any parent, guardian, or legal custodian notified under this subdivision shall receive the written memorandum provided for in subdivision 10d, paragraph (c).

Subd. 10c. Duties of the local social service agency upon receipt of a report of medical neglect. If the report alleges medical neglect as defined in section 260.015, subdivision 10, clause (e), the local welfare agency shall, in addition to its other duties under this section, immediately consult with designated hospital staff and with the parents of the infant to verify that appropriate nutrition, hydration, and medication are being provided; and shall immediately secure an independent medical review of the infant's medical charts and records and, if necessary, seek a court order for an independent medical examination of the infant. If the review or examination leads to a conclusion of medical neglect, the agency shall intervene on behalf of the infant by initiating legal proceedings under section 260.131 and by filing an expedited motion to prevent the withholding of medically indicated treatment.

Subd. 10d. Notification of neglect or abuse in a facility. (a) When a report is received that alleges neglect, physical abuse, or sexual abuse of a child while in the care of a facility required to be licensed pursuant to sections 245.781 to 245.812, the commissioner or local welfare agency investigating the report shall provide the following information to the parent, guardian, or legal custodian of a child alleged to have been neglected, physically abused, or sexually abused: the name of the facility; the fact that a report alleging neglect, physical abuse, or sexual abuse of a child in the facility has been received; the nature of the alleged neglect, physical abuse, or sexual abuse; that the agency is conducting an investigation; any protective or corrective measures being taken pending the outcome of the investigation; and that a written memorandum will be provided when the investigation is completed.

(b) The commissioner or local welfare agency may also provide the information in paragraph (a) to the parent, guardian, or legal custodian of any other child in the facility if the investigative agency knows or has reason to believe the alleged neglect,

physical abuse, or sexual abuse has occurred. In determining whether to exercise this authority, the commissioner or local welfare agency shall consider the seriousness of the alleged neglect, physical abuse, or sexual abuse; the number of children allegedly neglected, physically abused, or sexually abused; the number of alleged perpetrators; and the length of the investigation. The facility shall be notified whenever this discretion is exercised.

(c) When the commissioner or local welfare agency has completed its investigation, every parent, guardian, or legal custodian notified of the investigation by the commissioner or local welfare agency shall be provided with the following information in a written memorandum: the name of the facility investigated; the nature of the alleged neglect, physical abuse, or sexual abuse; the investigator's name; a summary of the investigation find-

ings; a statement whether the report was found to be substantiated, inconclusive, or false; and the protective or corrective measures that are being or will be taken. The memorandum shall be written in a manner that protects the identity of the reporter and the child and shall not contain the name, or to the extent possible, reveal the identity of the alleged perpetrator or of those interviewed during the investigation. The commissioner or local welfare agency shall also provide the written memorandum to the parent, guardian, or legal custodian of each child in the facility if the report is substantiated. The commissioner or local welfare agency may also provide the written memorandum to the parent, guardian, or legal custodian of any other child in the facility if the investigation is inconclusive. The facility shall be notified whenever this discretionary authority is exercised.

A RESOURCE BIBLIOGRAPHY

RESOURCE BIBLIOGRAPHY

Prepared by the Minnesota Program for Victims of Sexual Assault, Minnesota Department of Corrections, 1986.

Sexual Assault — General

- Barry, Kathleen. *Female Sexual Slavery*, Prentice Hall, Englewood Cliffs, NJ, 1979.
- Bellinger, Dottie and Monsees, Helen (eds.). *Sexual Violence: A Resource Manual for Clergy and Church Groups*. Sexual Assault Crisis Aid, 14 Exchange Building, Winona, MN 55987.
- Brownmiller, Susan. *Against Our Will: Men, Women and Rape*. New York: Simon & Schuster, 1975.
- Clark, Lorenne and Lewis, Debra. *Rape: The Price of Coercive Sexuality*. Toronto, Canada: The Women's Press, 1977.
- Fortune, Rev. Marie. *Sexual Violence: The Unmentionable Sin: An Ethical and Pastoral Perspective*. Pilgrim Press, 1983.
- Gager, N. and Schurr, C. *Sexual Assault: Confronting Rape in America*. New York: Gosset & Dunlop, 1976.
- Greer, Germaine. "Seduction is a Four-letter Word." *Playboy*, 20 (1973) 1:80.
- Griffin, Susan. "Rape: The All American Crime." *Ramparts*, 10 (Sept. 1971) 3:26-35.
- Griffin, Susan. *Rape — The Power of Consciousness*. New York: Harper & Row, Pub., 1979.
- Haskell, Molly. *From Reverence to Rape: The Treatment of Women in the Movies*. Baltimore: Penguin Books, Inc., 1974.
- Hennepin County Attorney's Office, *Sexual Assault: Facts You Should Know*. Sexual Assault Services, C-2100 Government Center, Minneapolis, MN 55487.
- Horos, Carol V. *Rape*. New Canaan, Conn.: Dell Publ., 1981.
- Medea, Andrea and Thompson, Kathleen. *Against Rape*. New York: Farrar, Staus and Giroux, 1974.
- Minnesota Program for Victims of Sexual Assault, *Sexual Assault: A Statewide Problem* (brochure). MPVSA, 300 Bigelow Bldg., 450 No. Syndicate St., St. Paul, MN 55104.
- Mohr, J. W. and Turner, R. E. "Sexual Deviations: Part IV — Pedophilia." *Applied Therapeutics*, 9, 362-5, 1967.
- Norman, Eve. *Rape*. Los Angeles, Calif.; Wollstonecraft, Inc., 1973.
- On Rape*, Second Edition. Minneapolis: N.O.W. State Task Force on Rape, 1975.
- Russell, Diana. *The Politics of Rape*. New York: Stein and Day, 1974.
- Russell, Diana. *Sexual Exploitation: Rape, Child Sexual Abuse and Workplace Harassment*. Beverly Hills: Sage Publications, 1984.
- Tyson, Gail. *Violence In Our Lives: Focus on Rape*. Harrisburg Area Rape Crisis Center, Harrisburg, PA, 1977.
- Walker, Marcia J. and Brodsky, Stanley L. *Sexual Assault*. Lexington, Mass.: Lexington Books, 1976.
- White, P. N. and Rollins, J. C. "Rape: A Family Crisis." *Family Relations*, 1980, 30, 103-109.
- Wilson, Carolyn F. *Violence Against Women*, an Annotated Bibliography, G.K. Hall & Co., Boston, MA, 1981.
- Women and Sexual Violence*. A study guide that can be used for five discussion sessions. In *Response-Ability*, No. 12, Fall, 1981. Available from: Division of Corporate & Social Mission, General Assembly Mission Board, Presbyterian Church in the United States, 341 Ponce de Leon Avenue, N.E., Atlanta, GA 30365.

Sexual Assault — Research & Reports

- Amir, Menachem. *Patterns in Forcible Rape*. Chicago: University of Chicago Press, 1971.

- Burgess, A. W. and Holmstrom, L. L. "Coping Behavior of the Rape Victim." *American Journal of Psychiatry*, 1976, 133, 413-418.
- DeFrancis, Vincent. *Protecting the Child Victim of Sex Crimes Committed by Adults*. Denver: The American Humane Association, Children's Division, 1969.
- FBI Uniform Crime Reports: *Crime in the U.S.*, 1978. Washington, D.C.: U.S. Dept. of Justice, 1979.
- Forman, B.D. "Cognitive Modification of Obsessive Thinking in a Rape Victim: A Preliminary Study." *Psychological Reports*, 1980b, 47, 819-822.
- Holmes, Karen A. and Williams, Joyce E. *The Second Assault: Rape and Public Attitudes*. Westport, Conn.: Greenwood Press, 1981.
- LeGrand, Camille. "Rape and Rape Laws: Sexism in Society and Law." *California Law Review*, 61 (1973) 3:919-941.
- Malamuth, N. and Donnerstein, E. (Eds.) *Pornography and Sexual Aggression*. New York: Academic Press, 1984.
- Marsh, Jeanne C.; Geist, Alison; Caplan, Nathan. *Rape and the Limits of Law Reform*. Auburn House Publishing, 1982.
- Sprung, S. *Resolution of Rape Crisis: Six to Eighteen Month Follow-up*. Smith College Studies in Social Work, 1977, 48, 22.
- Veronen, L. J. and Kilpatrick, D. G. "Rape: A Precursor of Change." In E. J. Callahan and K. A. McCluskey (eds.) *Proceedings of Seventh Lifespan Developmental Psychology Conference: Non-Normative Life Events*. New York: Plenum, in Press.
- Williams, Joyce & Holmes, Karen. *The Second Assault: Rape & Public Attitudes*. Westport, Connecticut: Greenwood Press, 1981.

Sexual Assault — Prevention and Self Defense

- Bateman, Py. *Acquaintance Rape: Awareness & Prevention*. 1982, 24 pages. Available from: Alternatives to Fear, 101 Nickerson, Suite 250, Seattle, WA 98109, (phone: 206-282-0177).
- Bateman, Py. *Fear into Anger: A Manual of Self Defense for Women*, 1982, 144 pages. Available from: Alternatives to Fear, 101 Nickerson, Suite 250, Seattle, WA 98109, (phone: 206-282-0177).
- Csida, June Bundy and Csida, Joseph. *Rape: How To Avoid It and What To Do About It If You Can't*. Chatsworth, Calif.: Books for Better Living, 1974.
- Freedom From Rape*. Ann Arbor, Mich.: Women's Crisis Center, 1974.
- How To Protect Yourself Against Sexual Assault*. (Booklet) GPO #027-000-01004-1. Complimentary copy available from Public Inquiries, Room 11A-21, National Clearinghouse for Mental Health Information, NIMH, 5600 Fishers Lane, Rockville, MA 20857. Additional copies available from: Superintendent of Documents, U.S. Government Printing Office, Washington, D.C. 20402.
- Kent, Cordelia Anderson. *Illusion Theater Guide for Teaching Mentally Retarded Persons about Sexual Abuse Prevention Education*, Illusion Theater, 528 Hennepin Avenue, #309, Minneapolis, MN 55409.
- Minnesota Program for Victims of Sexual Assault. *Preventing Sexual Abuse of Persons with Disabilities: A Curriculum for Hearing Impaired, Physically Disabled, Blind, and Mentally Retarded Students*. MPVSA, 300 Bigelow Bldg., 450 No. Syndicate St., St. Paul, MN 55104.
- Rape & Older Women: A Guide to Prevention & Protection*. 1979, 171 pages, GPO #017-Sexual Assault, *Sexual Assault: A for Victims of Sexual Assault*, *Sexual Assault: A* 024-00849-4. Complimentary copy diccate St., St. Paul, available from: Public Inquiries, Room 11A-21, National Clearinghouse for Mental Deviations: Part IV — Health Information, NIMH, 5600 Fishers Lane, Rockville, MD 20857. Additional copies available from: Superintendent of Documents, U.S. Government Printing Office, Rape, Washington, D.C. 20402.

- Rape Awareness & Educators* (Resource book & curriculum guide). Available from: Rape and Crisis Center of Syracuse, Inc., 304 Seymour Street, Syracuse, NY 13204.
- Rape Prevention Workshops: A Group Leader's Guide*. 1980, 155 pages. Available from: Women Against Rape, P.O. Box 02084, Columbus, Ohio 43202.
- Stuart, Virginia. *Sexuality and Sexual Assault: A Disabled Perspective*, A Manual for a Model Workshop, Health and Rehabilitation Service Program, Southwest State University, Marshall, MN July 1980.
- Tschirhart, Linda and Fetter, Ann. *In Defense of Ourselves - A Rape Prevention Handbook for Women*. Garden City, New York: Dolphin Books, 1979.

Sexual Assault — Victim Assistance & Treatment

- Anoka County Attorney's Office, *A Note to Those Closest to Sexual Assault Victims*. Victim/Witness Assistance Program, Courthouse, Anoka, MN 55303.
- Bard, Morton and Ellison, Katherine. "Crisis Intervention and Investigation of Forcible Rape." *Police Chief*, 41 (1974) 5:68-74.
- Bode, Janet. *Fighting Back: How to Cope With the Medical Emotional and Legal Consequences of Rape*. New York: MacMillian Publishing Company, 1978.
- Burgess, Ann Wolbert and Holmstrom, Lynda Lytle. "Crisis and Counseling Requests of Rape Victims." *Nursing Research*, 23 (1974) 6:196-202.
- Burgess, Ann and Holmstrom, Lynda. *Rape: Crisis and Recovery*, Boston: Robert J. Brady Co. (Prentice-Hall), 1979.
- Burgess, A. W. and Holmstrom, L. L. "Rape Trauma Syndrome." *American Journal of Psychiatry*, 1974, 131, 981-986.
- Burgess, Ann Wolbert, and Holmstrom, Lynda Lytle. "The Rape Victim in the Emergency Ward." *American Journal of Nursing*, 73 (1973) 10; 1740-1745.
- Burgess, Ann Wolbert, and Holmstrom, Lynda Lytle "Sexual Trauma of Children and Adolescents: Pressure, Sex, and Secrecy." *Nursing Clinics of North America*, 10 (1975) 3:551-563.
- Connell, Noreen and Wilson, Cassandra, Eds. *Rape: The First Sourcebook for Women*. New York: Plume Books, 1974.
- Drapkin, Israel and Viano, Emilio. *Victimology*. Lexington, Mass.: Lexington Books, 1974.
- Elwood, N. Douglas and Larson, Brude, (eds.) *Same-Sex Assault: A Handbook for Intervention Training and Sexual Assault Against Men — It Does Happen*. MPVSA, 300 Bigelow Bldg., 450 No. Syndicate St., St. Paul, MN 55104.
- Forman, B. D. "Psychotherapy with Rape Victims." *Psychotherapy: Theory, Research and Practice*. 1980a, 17, 304-311.
- Hankoff, L. D.; Micchorr, T.; Tomlinson, Karl E.; and Joyce, Sheila A. "A Program of Crisis Intervention in the Emergency Medical Setting." *American Journal of Psychiatry*, 131 (1974) 1:47-50.
- How To Organize a Women's Crisis-Service Center*. Ann Arbor, Mich.: Women's Crisis Center, 1974.
- Law Enforcement Commission. *Rape Protocol and Child Interview Techniques: A Basic Guide for Professionals Who Deal with Adult and Child Victims of Sexual Abuse*. Chicago, IL: Citizens Committee for Victim Assistance, 1979.
- "Medical Procedures in Cases of Suspected Rape." American College of Obstetrics and Gynecologists Technical Bulletin #14, reprinted in *Medical Aspects of Human Sexuality*, 7 (1973) 9:65-71. Amended 7-12:166.
- Ministries with Women in Crisis*. Packet of materials. Cost: \$1.95. Send to: Service Center, Board of Global Ministries, 7820 Reading Road, Cincinnati, OH 45237.
- Schultz, LeRoy (ed.). *Rape Victimology*. Springfield, IL: Chas. C. Thomas Publishers, 1975.

- Sexual Assault and Battering: A Resource Manual for Physicians, Counselors and Attorneys*, 1985. Available from Women's Resource Center of Winona, 14 Exchange Bldg., Winona, MN 55987.
- Silverman, D. C. "Sharing the Crisis of Rape: Counseling the Mates and Families of Victims." *American Journal of Orthopsychiatry*, 1978, 48, 166-173.
- Sprei, J. and Goodwin, R. A. "Group Treatment of Sexual Assault Survivors." *Journal for Specialists in Group Work*, 1983, 8, 39-46.
- Viano, Emillio C. *Victims & Society*. Washington, D.C.: Visage Press, 1976.
- Warner, Carmen. *Rape and Sexual Assault: Management and Intervention*. Germantown, MD: Aspen System, 1980.
- Wood, Pamela Lakes. "The Victim in a Forcible Rape Case: A Feminist View." *American Criminal Law Review*, 11 (Winter 1973) 35:345-347.

Sexual Assault — Marital Rape

- Barry, Susan. "Spousal Rape, the Uncommon Law," *American Bar Association Journal*, September, 1980.
- Finkelhor, D. and Yllo K. "Forced Sex in Marriage." *Crime and Delinquency*, 1982.
- Finkelhor, David and Yllo, Kersti. *License to Rape: Sexual Abuse of Wives*. New York: Holt, Rinehart and Winston, 1985.
- Groth, N. and Gary, Thomas. "Marital Rape." *Medical Aspects of Human Sexuality*, Vol. 15, No. 3, 1981.
- Russell, Diana E. H. *Rape in Marriage*. New York: Macmillian, 1982.
- Women's History Research Center. "National Clearinghouse on Marital Rape." 2325 Oak Street, Berkeley, CA 94708.

Sexual Assault — Offender Issues

- Carnes, Patrick. *The Sexual Addiction*. Minneapolis: CompCare Publications, 1983.
- Cohen, Murray L., et. al. "The Psychology of Rapists." *Seminars in Psychiatry*, 3 (August 1971): 307-327.
- Frisbie, L. V. *Another Look at Sex Offenders in California*, California Mental Health Research Monograph, No. 12. Sacramento: California Dept. of Mental Hygiene, 1969.
- Frisbie, L. V. and Dondis, E. H. *Recidivism Among Treated Sex Offenders*, California Mental Health Research Monograph No. 5, Sacramento: California Dept. of Mental Hygiene, 1965.
- Gebhard, P.H.; Gagnon, J. H.; Pomeroy, W. B. and Christenson, C. V. *Sex Offenders*. New York: Harper & Row, 1965.
- Groth, Nicholas. *Men Who Rape: Psychology of the Offender*. Plenum Press, 1979.
- Knopp, Fay H. *Retraining Adult Sex Offenders: Methods and Models*, 1983. Available from: Safer Society Press, 3049 East Genessee St., Syracuse, N.Y. 13224.
- Knopp, Fay H. *The Youthful Sex Offender: The Rationale and Goals of Early Intervention and Treatment*, 1984. Available from: Safer Society Press, 3049 East Genessee St., Syracuse, N.Y. 13224.
- MacDonald, John. *Rape: Offenders and Their Victims*. Springfield, Ill.: Charles C. Thomas Publishers, 1971.

Child Sexual Assault and Incest — General

- Bagley, C. "Incest Behavior and the Incest Taboo." *Social Problems*, 16, 1969, pp. 505-519.
- Burgess, Ann W., et. al. *Sexual Assault of Children and Adolescents*. Lexington Books, 1978.
- Butler, Sandra. *Conspiracy of Silence — The Trauma of Incest*. New York: Bantam, 1979.
- Finkelhor, David. *Sexually Victimized Children*. New York: The Free Press, 1979.

- Forward, S. and Buck, C. *Betrayal of Innocence*. New York: Penguin, 1979.
- Gagnon, J. H. "Female Child Victims of Sex Offenses." *Social Problems*, 1965, 13, 176-192.
- Gil, D. G. *Violence Against Children*. Cambridge, Mass.: Harvard University Press, 1972.
- Goodwin, Jean. *Sexual Abuse: Incest Victims and Their Families*. Boston: John Wright, PSG, 1982.
- Helfer, R. E., M.D.; and Kemp, C. H.; M.D.; Eds. *Child Abuse and Neglect: The Family and the Community*. Michigan State University, Ballenger Publications, 1976.
- Herman, Judith. *Father-Daughter Incest*. Cambridge: Harvard University Press, 1981.
- Hinojosa, David. *The Self-Concept and Child Abuse*, 1980.
- Johnston, M. S. K. *Child Abuse and Neglect*, Vol. 3, 1979, pp. 943-951.
- Justice, B. and Justice, R. *The Broken Taboo: Sex in the Family*. New York: Human Sciences Press, 1979.
- Kates, M. *Incest: The Taboo Next Door*. San Francisco: 1975, 36-38.
- Kempe, R. S. and Kempe, C. H. *Child Abuse*. Cambridge, MA: Harvard University Press, 1978.
- Kroth, Jerome. *Child Sexual Abuse: Analysis of a Family Therapy Approach*. Springfield, IL: Charles C. Thomas, Publisher, 1979.
- Maisch, H. *Incest*. New York: Stein and Day, 1972.
- Medlicott, R. W. "Parent-Child Incest." *Australia/New Zealand Journal of Psychiatry*, 1967, 1, 180-87.
- Miller, A. *Thou Shalt Not Be Aware*. New York: Fauar, Straus, Givox, 1984.
- Minnesota Program for Victims of Sexual Assault, *Are Children With Disabilities Vulnerable to Sexual Abuse?*, (brochure). MPVSA, 300 Bigelow Bldg., 450 No. Syndicate St., St. Paul, MN 55104.
- Minnesota Program for Victims of Sexual Assault, *Child Sexual Abuse . . . It Is Happening*, (pamphlet). MPVSA, 300 Bigelow Bldg., 450 No. Syndicate St., St. Paul, MN 55104.
- Minnesota Program for Victims of Sexual Assault, *Say No, Get Away and Tell Someone*, (brochure). MPVSA, 300 Bigelow Bldg., 450 No. Syndicate St., St. Paul, MN 55104.
- Muldoon, Linda (ed.). Minnesota Program for Victims of Sexual Assault. *Incest: Confronting the Silent Crime*. Public Document Division, 117 University Avenue, St. Paul, MN 55155.
- Mrazek, P. B. "Annotation: Sexual Abuse of Children." *Journal of Child Psychology and Psychiatry*, 1980, 21 (1), 91-95.
- Nasjleti, Maria. *Suffering in Silence: The Male Incest Victim*. Child Welfare League of America, Vol. LIX, Number 5, May 1980.
- Peters, J. J. "Children Who Are Victims of Sexual Assault and the Psychology of Offenders." *American Journal of Psychotherapy*, July 1976, 30 (3), 398-421.
- Rosenfeld, A. A. "Sexual Misuse and the Family." *Journal American Academy Child Psychiatry*, 16 (2), 1977, pp. 327-339.
- Rossmann, P. *Sexual Experience Between Men and Boys*. Springfield, IL: Chas C. Thomas, 1976.
- Sgroi, Suzanne M. "Sexual Molestation of Children." *Children Today*, (May-June 1975): 18-21.
- Texas Migrant Council and Rosie Lee Camacho, *Child Abuse and Neglect in the Mexican American Community*, 1980.
- Tooley, K. M. "A Young Child as Victim of Sibling Attack." *Social Casework*, 58, January, 1977, pp. 25-28.
- Tormes, Yvonne. *Child Victims of Incest*. Denver: The American Humane Association, 1968.

- U.S. Department of Health and Human Services, *Selected Readings on Adolescent Maltreatment*, 1981.
- U.S. Department of Health and Human Services, *Sexual Abuse of Children: Selected Reading*, 1980.
- Walters, David R. *Physical and Sexual Abuse of Children*. Bloomington Indiana University Press, 1975.
- Zaphiris, A. G. *Incest: The Family with Two Known Victims*. Englewood, CO: American Humane Assoc., 1978.

Child Sexual Assault and Incest — Personal Accounts

- Angelou, Maya. *I Know Why the Caged Bird Sings*. New York: Bantom, 1971.
- Armstrong, Louise. *Kiss Daddy Goodnight*. New York: Hawthorn Books, Inc., 1978.
- Brady, Katherine (Pseudonym) *Father's Days: A True Story About Incest*. New York: Seaview Books, 1979.
- McNaron, Toni A. H. and Yarrow, Morgan, (eds.) *Voices in the Night*. Minneapolis: Cleis Press, 1982.
- Rush, Florence. *The Best Kept Secret*. New York: McGraw Hill, 1981.
- Walker, A. *The Color Purple*. New York: Washington Square, 1982.

Child Sexual Assault and Incest — Research and Reports

- Aberle, D. R., et. al. "A Biological Basis for the Incest Taboo." In: Godde, W. (ed.) *Readings on the Family and Society*. Englewood Cliffs, N. J.: Prentice-Hall, 1964.
- Award, G. A. "Single Case Study: Father-Son Incest, A Case Report." *Journal of Nervous and Mental Disease*, 162 (2), 135-139, 1976.
- Benward, J. and Denson-Gerber, J. *Incest as a Causative Factor in Anti-Social Behavior: An Explorative Study*. New York: Odyssey Institute, 1975.
- Brant, R. S. and Tisza, V. B. "The Sexually Misused Child." *American Journal Orthopsychiatry*, 47 (1), January, 1977.
- Browning, D. H. and Boatman, B. "Incest: Children at Risk." *American Journal Psychiatry*, 134 (1), January, 1977.
- Burgess, Ann W. and Holmstrom, Lynda L. "Sexual Assault of Children and Adolescents: Pressure, Sex and Secrecy." *Nursing Clinics of North America*, September, 1975.
- Cohen, Ronald, et. al. "The Susceptibility of Child Witnesses to Suggestion: An Empirical Study." *Law and Human Behavior*, Vol. 4, Winter 1980, pp. 201-210.
- DeFrancis, V. "Protecting the Child Victim of Sex Crimes Committed by Adults." *Federal Probation*, 35 (1971) 3:15-20.
- DeMott, Benjamin. "The Pro-Incest Lobby," *Psychology Today*, March, 1980.
- Finkelhor, David. *Child Sexual Abuse: New Theory and Research*. New York: Free Press (MacMillan), 1985.
- Gagnon, John. "Female Child Victims of Sex Offenses." *Social Problems*, 13 (1965): 176-192.
- Gutheil, T. G., et. al. "Multiple Overt Incest as Family Defense Against Loss." *Family Process*, 16 (1), March, 1977, pp. 105-116.
- Henderson, J. "Incest: A Synthesis of Data." *Canadian Psychiatric Association Journal*, 1972, 17, 299-313.
- James, J. and Meyerding, J. "Early Sexual Experiences as a Factor in Prostitution." *Archives of Sexual Behavior*, 1977, 7 (1), 31-42.
- Kaufman, I.; Peck, A. L. and Tagiuri, C. K. "The Family Constellation and Overt Incestuous Relations Between Father and Daughter." *American Journal of Orthopsychiatry*, 1954, 24, 266-277.
- Landis, Judson O. "Experiences of 500 Children with Adult Sexual Deviation." *The Psychiatric Quarterly Review* (Supplement), 30 (1956): 91-108.

- Larson, N. R. *An Analysis of the Effectiveness of a State-Sponsored Program Designed to Teach Intervention Skills in the Treatment of Family Sexual Abuse*. Doctoral Dissertation, University of MN, Minneapolis, MN, 1981.
- Machotka, P.; Pittman, F. S. and Flomenhaft, K. "Incest as a Family Affair." *Family Process*, 1967, (6) 1, 98-116.
- Meiselman, K. C. *Incest: A Psychological Study of Causes and Effects with Treatment Recommendations*. San Francisco: Jossey-Bass, 1978.
- Molnar, B. and Cameron, P. "Incest Syndromes: Observations in a General Hospital Psychiatric Unit." *Canadian Psychiatric Association Journal*, 1975, 20, 1-8.
- Mrazek, D. A. "The Psychiatric Examination of the Sexually Abused Child." *Child Abuse and Neglect*, Vol. 4, (4), 1980, pp. 274-284.
- Nakashima, I. I., et. al. "Incest: Review and Clinical Experience." *Pediatrics*, 60 (5), November, 1977, pp. 696-701.
- Peters, P. *The Psychological Effects of Childhood Rape*. Philadelphia: Center for Studies in Sexual Deviance, 1973.
- Rosenfeld, A. A. "Incidence of a History of Incest Among 18 Female Psychiatric Patients." *American Journal of Psychiatry*. 1979, 126, (3), 791-795.
- Sholevar, G. P. "A Family Therapist Looks at the Problem of Incest." *The Bulletin of the American Academy of Law and Psychiatry*. 3 (1), 1975.
- Summit, R. and J. Kryso. "Sexual Abuse of Children; A Clinical Spectrum." *American Journal Orthopsychiatry*, 48 (2), April, 1978.
- Texas Migrant Council and Lex Berrious, *Child Abuse and Neglect Among Mexican American Migrants: A Study of Cases*, 1981.
- Weinberg, S. K. *Incest Behavior*. New York: Citadel Press, 1976. (Originally Published, 1955).
- Woodbury, John and Schwartz, Elroy. *The Silent Sin: A Case History of Incest*. New York: Signet, 1971.

Child Sexual Assault and Incest — Prevention and Education

- Adams, Caren and Fay, Jennifer. *No More Secrets: Protecting Your Child From Sexual Assault*. 1981, 90 pages. Available from: Impact Publishers, P.O. Box 1094, San Luis Obispo, CA 93406.
- Adams, Caren and Fay, Jennifer. *Nobody Told Me It Was Rape: A Parent's Guide for Talking with Teenagers About Acquaintance Rape and Sexual Exploitation*, 1984. Available from: Network Publications, 1700 Mission St., Santa Cruz, CA 95060.
- Beltrami County Sexual Assault Program, *Pre-School Sexual Abuse Study Cards*. Available from: Sexual Assault Program, Box 688, Bemidji, MN 56601.
- Carver County Program for Victims of Sexual Assault, *Children Need Protection: A Guide for Talking to Children About Sexual Assault*, 1980, 16 pages, 401 E. 4th St., Chaska, MN 55381.
- Cooperative Approaches to Child Protection: A Community Guide*, Mary Urzi (ed.). Division of Social Services, Minnesota Dept. of Public Welfare, St. Paul, MN 55155.
- DeFrancis, V. *Protecting the Child Victim of Sex Crimes Committed by Adults*. Denver: Children's Division American Humane Association, 1969.
- Faye, Jennifer. *Frog Talks About Touching*, Seattle: King County Rape Relief, 1981.
- Faye, Jennifer and Flerchwerger, Billie Jo. *Top Secret: Sexual Assault Information for Teenagers Only*. Available from: King County Rape Relief, 305 South 43rd, Renton, WA 98055.
- Fortune, Marie. *Sexual Abuse Prevention: A Study for Teenagers*, 1984. Available from: United Church Press, 132 W. 31st, New York, NY 10001.
- Fridley Police Department, *My Personal Safety Coloring Book*, 6431 University Avenue, N.E., Fridley, MN 55432.

- Goodman, Gail S., et. al. "Would You Believe a Child Witness." *Psychology Today*, Vol. 15, No. 11, November, 1981, pp: 82-95.
- He Told Me Not to Tell* (Parents guide for talking to children about sexual assault), 1979. Available from: King County Rape Relief Program, 305 S. 73rd St., Renton, WA 98055.
- How to Talk to Your Children About Sexual Assault: A Guide for Parents*, 1981. Available from: Sexual Assault Services, 7066 Stillwater Road, Oakdale, MN 55119.
- Illusion Theater, *Study Cards*, for grades K-8 for use in discussing sexual abuse prevention education the Touch Continuum. Available from: Illusion Theater, 528 Hennepin Avenue, #309, Minneapolis, MN 55403.
- Kent, Cordelia Anderson. *Child Sexual Abuse Prevention Project: An Educational Program for Children*, 1979. Available from: Illusion Theater, 528 Hennepin Avenue, #309, Minneapolis, MN 55403.
- Kent, Cordelia Anderson. *No Easy Answers: A Sexual Abuse Prevention Curriculum for Junior and Senior High Students*, 1982, 208 pages. Available from: Illusion Theater, 528 Hennepin Avenue, Room 309, Minneapolis, MN 55403.
- Kent, Cordelia Anderson. *Child Sexual Abuse Prevention: Taking the First Step*, Illusion Theater, 528 Hennepin Avenue, #309, Minneapolis, MN 55403.
- Kleven, S. and Krebill, J. *The Touching Problem and Sexual Abuse Prevention*, Coalition for Child Advocacy, Whatcom County Opportunity Council, Bellingham, WA 98227.
- Minimizing Abuses of the Imbalance of Power: A Capsule Educator's Role in Preventing Harm to Children and Youth*. MN Department of Education, 1984.
- National Committee for Prevention of Child Abuse, *You Can Prevent Child Abuse*, 1980.
- National Committee for the Prevention of Child Abuse. *Spider-Man and Power Pack*. P.O. Box 944283, Chicago, IL 60690.
- Plummer, Carole A. *Preventing Sexual Abuse — Activities and Strategies for Those Working with Children and Adolescents*. Oshtemo, MI: Learning Publications, Inc., 1984.
- Ryerson, Ellen. *The Kindergarten through Twelve Curriculum*, Developmental Disabilities Project, Seattle Rape Relief, 1825 South Jackson, Suite 102, Seattle, WA 98144.
- Sanford, Linda. *Come Tell Me Right Away: A Positive Approach*, (booklet) 1982, 23 pages. Available from: Lynn Sanford, Rush Meadow Road, Brownsville, VT 05037.
- Sanford, Linda. *The Silent Children: A Parents' Guide to the Prevention of Child Sexual Abuse*. New York: McGraw-Hill Book Company, 1980.
- Three in Every Classroom: The Child Victim of Incest — What You As a Teacher Can Do*. Available from: Sexual Assault Program, P.O. Box 1472, Bemidji, MN 56601.
- Strategies for Free Children: A Guide to Child Assault Prevention*, 1982 (manual for educating elementary school-age children). Available from: Child Assault Prevention Project, Women Against Rape, P.O., Box 02084, Columbus, OH 43202.
- Sweet, Phyllis. *Something Happened to Me* (book for children), 1981. Available from: Mother Courage Press, 224 State Street, Racine, WI 53403.
- Wachter, O. *No More Secrets for Me*. Boston: Little, Brown, 1983.
- What Can I Do to Prevent Harm to Children? A Resource Guide for Mandated Reporters*. Contact: Division of Social Services, Dept. of Public Welfare, 658 Cedar Street, St. Paul, MN 55155.
- Williams, Joy. *Red Flag, Green Flag*, (educational coloring book), and *Once I Was a Little Bit Frightened* (storybook). Available from: Rape & Abuse Crisis Center, P.O. Box 1655, Fargo, N.D. 58107.
- You Can Say Yes, You Can Say No* (coloring book for children). Available from: Cathy Washabaugh or Carol Justin, Catholic Social Services, 207 E. Michigan, Milwaukee, WI 53202.

Child Sexual Assault and Incest — Intervention and Treatment — General

- Anderson, Edward C. *Prosecution of Child Abuse Cases, Technical Notes and Briefing Papers*. Minnesota County Attorney's Council, 40 Milton Street, St. Paul, MN 55104.
- Anderson, Lorna M. and Schafer, Gretchen. "The Character - Disordered Family: A Community Treatment Model for Family Sexual Abuse." *American Journal of Orthopsychiatry*, 49 (3) July, 1979, 436-45.
- Besharov, Douglas J. "Building a Community Response to Child Abuse and Maltreatment." *Children Today*, (Sept. - Oct. 1975): 2-4.
- Byerly, Carolyn. *The Mother's Book: How to Survive the Incest of Your Child*, 1985. Available from: Washington Coalition of Sexual Assault Programs, 110 E. 5th St., Rm. 214, Olympia, WA 98501.
- DeFrancis, V. (ed.). *Sexual Abuse of Children: Implications for Casework*. Denver: American Humane Association, 1969.
- Ekeling, N. B. and Hill, D. A. *Child Abuse: Intervention and Treatment*. Acton, MA: Pub. Science Group Inc., 1975.
- Gardner, Richard A. *Psychotherapeutic Approaches to the Resistant Child*. New York: Jason Aronson, 1975.
- Giarretto, H. "Humanistic Treatment of Father-Daughter Incest." *Journal of Humanistic Psychology*, 1978, 18 (4), 59-76.
- Giarretto, H. "The Treatment of Father-Daughter Incest: A Psycho-Social Approach." *Children Today*, July-August, 1976.
- Krieger, M. J. Rosenfeld, A. A.; Gordon, A. and Bennett, M. "Problems in the Psychotherapy of Children with Histories of Incest." *American Journal of Psychotherapy*, 1980, 34 (1), 81-88.
- Larson, Noel R. "Family Treatment for Sexual Abuse," in *Prohibited Relations*, (ed.) Lone Backe, Nini Leick, Joav Merrick and Niels Michelsen. Copenhagen, Denmark: Hans Reitzel Publishers, LTD., 1982.
- Larson, Noel and Maddock, James. "Incest and Other Adult-Child Sexual Contacts," in *Treatment Interventions in Human Sexuality*, Carol Nadelson and David B. Marcotte (eds.). New York: Plenum Press, 1983.
- Mayer, Adele. *Incest: A Treatment Manual for Therapy with Victims, Spouses, and Offenders*. Holmes Beach, FL: Learning Publications, Inc., 1983.
- Mayer, Adele. *Sexual Abuse: Causes, Consequences and Treatment of Incestuous & Pedophilic Acts*. Holmes Beach, FL: Learning Publications, 1985.
- Range Family Sexual Abuse Treatment Program, *Treating Incest in Rural Families*. Available from: Range Family Sexual Abuse Treatment Program, P.O. Box 1188, 624 South 13th Street, Virginia, MN 55792.
- Sexual Assault Services, *Some Questions You May Ask About Going to Court and Some Answers That Will Help You*, and *Kids Go to Court, Too* (booklets), Office of the Hennepin County Attorney, C-2100 Government Center, Minneapolis, MN 55487.
- Sexual Exploitation of Handicapped Students: A Description of the Elementary School Level Curriculum*. Available from: Seattle Rape Relief, Developmental Disabilities Project, 4224 University Way N.E., Seattle, WA 98105. (phone: 206-632-7273).
- Sgroi, S. M. "Kids with Clap: Gonorrhea as an Indicator of Child Sexual Assault." *Victimology: An International Journal*, Summer, 1977, 2 (2), 251-267.
- Sgroi, Suzanne M., M.D. *Handbook of Clinical Intervention in Child Sexual Abuse*, Lexington Books, 1982.
- Slager, Jorne P. "Counseling Sexually Abused Children." *The Personnel and Guidance Journal*, October 1978, 57 (2), 103-105.
- Walters, David R. *Physical and Sexual Abuse of Children: Causes and Treatment*. Bloomington: Indiana University Press, 1975.
- Yudkin, Marcia. "Breaking the Incest Taboo." *The Progressive for the American Family*, May 1981.

Child Sexual Assault and Incest — Intervention and Treatment — Interviewing Victims

- Dent, H. R., et. al. "Experimental Study of the Effectiveness of Different Techniques of Questioning Child Witnesses." *British Journal of Social and Clinical Psychology*, Vol. 18, February, 1979, pp. 41-51.
- Flammang, C. J. "Interviewing Child Victims of Sex Offenses," *Police*, Vol. 16 (6), February, 1972, pp. 24-28.
- International Association of Chiefs of Police. *Interviewing the Child Sex Victim*. Training Key No. 224, 1975.
- Schutz, Leroy G. "Interviewing Child Victims of Sex Offenders," *The Sexual Victimology of Youth*. C. C. Thomas, 1980, pp. 175-186.
- Wolbert, Burgess. "Interviewing Young Victims." *Sexual Assault of Children and Adolescents*. Lexington Books, 1978, pp. 171-180.